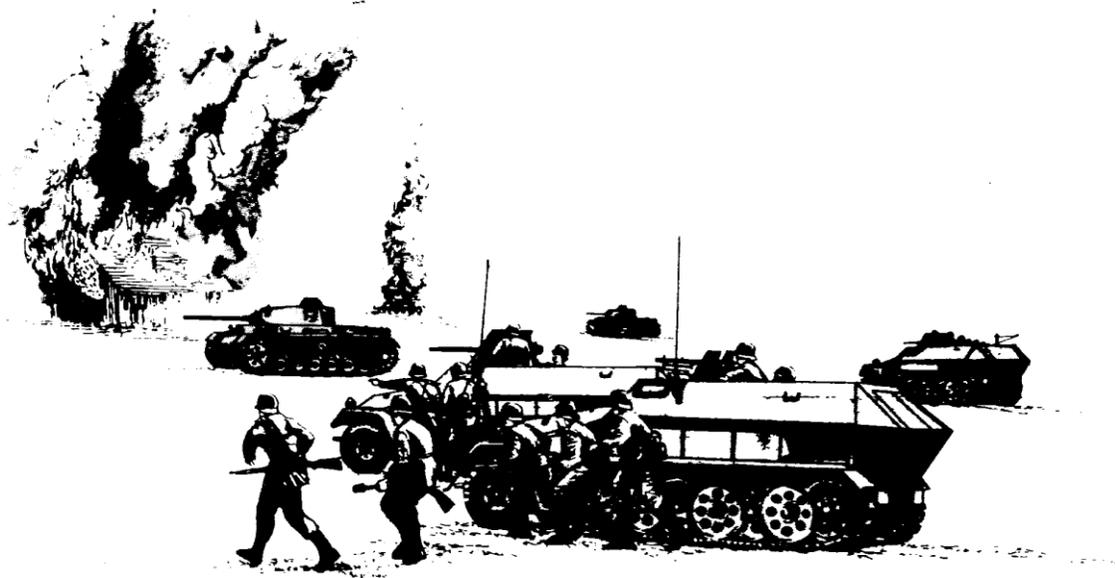


RISE AND DECLINE OF THE

THIRD REICH

Fourth edition, with rule questions and answers



Contents

1. Introduction	2	7. Hex Control	7
2. Victory conditions	3	8. Zones of control	7
2.1 Objectives	3	9. Bridgeheads	7
2.2 Two-player victory conditions	3	10. Year-start sequence	8
2.3 Multi-player victory conditions.....	3	10.1 intro.....	8
2.4 Neutral Italy or U.S.S.R.....	3	10.2 SW resolution	8
2.5 Withdrawal of a player from the game	3	10.3 BRP calculations.....	8
3. Scenario cards	4	10.4 SW construction	9
4. Counters	4	10.5 resolution of SW in 1945.....	9
4.1 Ground & air.....	4	11. BRP spending limit	9
4.2 Naval	4	12. Sequence of play	9
4.3 SW	4	12.1 Determination of initiative	9
4.4 Variant numbers.....	4	12.2 Declarations.....	10
4.5 BRP markers.....	5	12.3 Succeeding phases	10
5. Terrain & the Mapboard	5	12.4 Joint turn	10
5.1 Grid coordinates.....	5	12.5 Voluntary destruction of units	10
5.2 Playable hexes.....	5	13. Offensive option movement phase	10
5.3 Land/sea hexes	5	14. Offensive option combat phase	10
5.4 Cities	5	15. Offensive option unit construction phase	13
5.5 Fortresses.....	5	16. Offensive option strategic redeployment phase	14
5.6 Islands	6	17. Removal of unsupplied units	15
5.7 Terrain effects on combat	6	18. Attrition option	15
5.8 Front boundaries	6	19. Pass option	17
6. Stacking	6	20. Option determinants	17
6.1 Ground.....	6	21. Declarations of war	17
6.2 Naval at sea; air in the air	6	22. Minor country operations	18
6.3 Moving and embarked ground	7	23. Intervention in minor countries	19

24. Conquest of minor countries	19
25. Axis minor allies	20
26. Conquest of major powers	22
26.1 United States.....	22
26.2 Germany, Italy, Britain.....	22
26.3 BRP's received by the conqueror.....	22
26.4 Initial occupation during the second half of a winter turn.....	22
26.5 Hex control in the conquered country.....	22
26.6 Hex control in other territories.....	22
26.7 Italian surrender.....	22
26.8 France.....	22
26.9 Russia.....	22
27. Supply	23
27.1 Supply sources.....	23
27.2 Supply lines.....	23
27.3 Exemptions.....	24
27.4 Consequences to unsupplied units.....	24
28. Air warfare	25
28.1 Air bases.....	25
28.2 Movement.....	25
28.3 Employment.....	25
28.4 Offensive air missions.....	25
28.41 When they occur.....	25
28.42 Ground support.....	25
28.43 Counterair.....	26
28.44 Interception of DAS.....	26
28.45 Attacks on naval units.....	26
28.5 Defensive air missions.....	27
28.51 Defensive air support.....	27
28.52 Attacks on naval units.....	27
28.6 Partial air counters.....	27
29. Naval warfare	28
29.1 Naval basing.....	28
29.2 Movement.....	28
29.3 Employment.....	29
29.4 Offensive missions.....	29
29.41 Shore bombardment.....	29
29.42 Sea transport.....	30
29.43 Seaborne invasion.....	30
29.5 Interception.....	31
29.6 Sea escort.....	33
29.7 Partial naval counters.....	33
29.8 Construction.....	33
29.9 Refusing the opponent's losses.....	33
30. Replacement counters	34
31. Airborne	34
32. Partisans	34
33. Variant counters	35
33.1 Drawing variant counters.....	35
33.2 Playing variant counters.....	35
33.3 Inapplicable variants.....	35
33.4 Effects.....	35
33.41 Axis variants.....	35
33.42 Allied variants.....	36
33.5 Intelligence.....	36
33.6 Foreign aid.....	37
33.7 Turkey as a British minor ally.....	38
34. Anglo-French cooperation	38
35. Axis Forces in Africa	39
36. German-Italian cooperation	39
37. Gibraltar	40

38. Iraq	40
39. Ireland	40
40. Lend-lease	40
41. Malta	41
42. Murmansk convoy	41
43. Poland/East Europe	42
44. Russian winter	43
45. Russo-Allied cooperation	43
46. Spain and Spanish colonies	43
47. Suez canal	44
48. Switzerland	44
49. Vichy France	44
50. Special scenario rules	45
50.1 The 1939 scenario.....	45
50.2 The 1942 scenario.....	45
50.3 The 1944 scenario.....	46
51. Multi-player game	46
52. Sample turn	46
53. Chronology	52
54. Percentage table	52
55. Sequence of play	52
Yet More Possibilities (additional variants)	48
Index	50

[Compiler's notes: This is my attempt to bring together the rules, rule questions, and errata published by the Avalon Hill Game Company for the fourth edition of Rise and Decline of the Third Reich. Rules are in black; questions and answers are in blue; errata are in green. A question concerning a particular rule appears after that rule, including all of its subsections, so, for example, a rule question numbered 23 will appear at the end of section 23; that is, just prior to section 24; whereas questions numbered 23.1 and 23.2 will appear just after those subsections. Thus the numbering might seem somewhat out of order.

Wherever a rule question was repeated, but not exactly, I have tried to reproduce each variation below (with all of its spelling and grammatical errors), even if the change was minor. My intent is to allow the reader to make his/her own interpretations.

Where a rule question refers to more than one rule, it is listed by the earliest rule. A reference appears by each of the other rules. Where the numbers were separated by slashes in the original, I have replaced the slashes by ampersands.

The notation prior to each rule question refers to its source: **4ER** means page 30 of the fourth edition rules; **GG:Z** is page Z of the Gamer's Guide; and a notation **X:Y:Z** means the Avalon Hill General, volume X, number Y, page Z.

I have omitted advertisements for the General.
—Thomas Arndt]

1. INTRODUCTION—

1.1 *THIRD REICH* may be played by two to six players. (More than four cannot play the 1944 scenario; more than five cannot play the 1942 scenario.) Diplomacy (player interchange and dealing) is absent in a two player game, but may play an important role in multi-player games. The rules are identical, regardless of the number of players.

1.2 Because of the complexity of *THIRD REICH*, each term peculiar to the game is not always defined at its first appearance in the rules. The new player is advised to first skim over the rules, then read them, then be prepared for several rereadings. It takes several play sessions before a new player begins to become familiar with this game. New players might also find it helpful to begin play with the 1944 scenario which is the simplest of those provided.

1.3 One of the most important features of *THIRD REICH* is its *Basic Resource Points* (hereafter referred to as *BRPs*), which represent the economic/industrial capacities of the nations involved and thus their war effort potential. Each nation begins a game with a base amount of BRPs, which it may increase by economic growth when it has unused BRPs remaining at year's end, and which may be reduced by Strategic Warfare (bombers and submarines). This base amount is recreated at the start of each year. A nation may also increase the BRPs available to it in a given year (but not its base) by occupying conquered countries and colonies. A nation may spend BRPs to declare war, to conduct offensives, to

construct combat units, to wage strategic warfare, and to grant BRPs to other nations. It may involuntarily lose BRPs by losing control of a country it occupied at Year Start, by the loss of an area vital to it, or by the results of Strategic Warfare.

1.4 THIRD REICH is played in game turns representing three months each. Each *game turn* contains two *player turns*, the side with the higher BRP total usually moving first within the game turn. Player turns are further sub-divided into Movement, Combat, Construction, and Strategic Redeployment phases. There is a separate *Year Start Sequence* between each winter and spring game turn, during which Strategic Warfare resolution and construction take place and BRP levels are calculated and adjusted.

1.5 The map board is divided into three separate fronts by heavy red lines—Western, Eastern and Mediterranean. At the beginning of a player turn each major power selects, for each of the three fronts separately, either an Offensive Option, an Attrition Option, or a Pass Option.

1.6 Victory is determined by either the number of red-printed objectives a player controls, or the number of turns a nation may survive in the game, or by the turn on which the last Axis major power falls to the Allies.

2. VICTORY CONDITIONS—

2.1 The winner of most multi-player games, and of the two-player 1939 and 1942 scenarios, is determined by possession of the red-printed objective hexes at the end of play. Objectives in neutral and minor countries which have never become involved in the war are not credited to either side. If Russia surrenders during the game, any objective hexes remaining in Russian control *are* counted in the Allied total. The objective hexes are:

2.11 WESTERN FRONT: Antwerp, Berlin, Birmingham, Bonn, Breslau, Budapest, Essen, Leipzig, London, Lyons, Manchester, Marseilles, Oslo, Paris. (14)

2.12 EASTERN FRONT: Astrakhan, Dnepropetrovsk, Grozny, Kharkov, Krakow, Leningrad, Lvov, Maikop, Moscow, Riga, Smolensk, Stalingrad, Stockholm, Warsaw. (14)

2.13 MEDITERRANEAN FRONT: Alexandria, Athens, Belgrade, Genoa, Gibraltar, Istanbul, Madrid, Malta, Milan, Mosul, Ploesti, Rome, Suez, Tripoli. (14)

2.2 TWO-PLAYER VICTORY CONDITIONS:

2.21 CAMPAIGN GAME:

Allied Decisive	Conquer Axis by Summer 1944.
Allied Tactical	Conquer Axis by Winter 1944.
Allied Marginal	Conquer Axis by Summer 1945.
Stalemate	If Axis is not conquered by Summer 1945.
Axis Marginal	Control at least 28 objectives at the end of the Winter 1943 game turn.
Axis Tactical	Conquer any two Allied major powers; peace talks result in substantial Axis territorial gain.
Axis Decisive	Conquer three Allied major powers; United States sues for peace—Germany is master of Europe.

2.211 Note that to fulfill their victory conditions the Allies must capture *both* Berlin and Rome (or force an Italian surrender; see 26.7). Conquest of a major country occurs in the game turn in which the conquered nation fails to recapture its occupied capital. (*EXCEPTION: Russia; see 26.9*).

2.212 If the Axis fulfill their victory conditions, the game does not necessarily end unless the Allied player wishes to concede. It is still possible (though unlikely) for the Allied player to attain an equal or higher victory level by rapid conquest of the Axis.

2.22 1944 SCENARIO:

Allied Decisive	Conquer Germany in Winter 1944.
Allied Tactical	Conquer Germany in Spring 1945.
Allied Marginal	Conquer Germany in Summer 1945. (there is no stalemate)
Axis Marginal	Allies conquer Germany in Fall 1945.
Axis Tactical	Allies conquer Germany in Winter 1945.
Axis Decisive	Allies conquer Germany in Spring 1946.

2.23 Victory conditions for the two-player 1939 and 1942 scenarios are found on the scenario cards.

2.3 MULTI-PLAYER VICTORY CONDITIONS: (numerals show objectives which must be controlled to attain a given level of victory).

2.31 1939 SCENARIO:

	UK/US	France	Germany	Italy	USSR
Stalemate	7	Fall, 1940	20	5	6
Marginal	8	Winter, 1940	21	6	7
Tactical	9	Summer, 1941	22	7	9
Decisive	10	Survival	23	8	11

2.32 1942 SCENARIO:

	UK/US	Germany	Italy	USSR
Stalemate	13	13	Winter, 1943	12
Marginal	14	14	Summer, 1944	13
Tactical	15	15	Winter, Fall, 1944	14
Decisive	16	16	Survival	15

2.32 {GG:44} If Italy survives the Winter 1944 turn, the 1942 scenario is over. How is it possible for Italy to win a Tactical Victory without also qualifying for a Decisive Victory?

A. The Italian victory conditions should be changed to Fall 1944.

[Compiler's note: I presume that the responder meant the Tactical level.]

2.33 1944 SCENARIO:

	UK/US	USSR	Germany
Stalemate	20	17	—
Marginal	21	18	be conquered in Fall 1945
Tactical	22	19	be conquered in Winter 1945.
Decisive	23	20	be conquered in Spring 1946.

All non-neutral objectives are assigned to either Britain/US or to Russia at game end. A hex which has never been controlled by either goes to the nation which has forces closest to it; if tied in distance it goes to the side that captured Berlin. A "neutral" objective is one in a country that has not participated in the game—such as Stockholm if Sweden remains neutral throughout.

2.34 CAMPAIGN GAME:

	UK/US	France	Germany	Italy	USSR
Stalemate	18	Fall, 1940	5	Winter, 1943	15
Marginal	19	Winter, 1940	6	Summer, 1944	16
Tactical	20	Summer, 1941	7	3	17
Decisive	21	Survival	8	4	18

The Campaign Game ends with the Summer 1945 turn unless both Germany and Italy are conquered sooner.

NOTE: the inclusion of dates or the word "survival" in any of the above victory conditions instead of a number of objectives indicates that the nation involved can attain that level of victory if they are not conquered during or prior to that game turn or if they survive the scenario unconquered.

2.35 Note that in a multi-player game a nation may win a "victory" yet fail to win the game. E.G. France could win a tactical victory in the Campaign Game by surviving its Summer, 1941 turn—yet lose to an Italy that held four objectives and a decisive victory.

2.3 {4ER, 18:5:19} In any scenario when there are two separate British & US players, how are the Victory Conditions applied to each player?

A. They always play as partners, i.e. they win or lose jointly.

2.3 {GG:44} In any scenario when there are two separate British and US players, how are the Victory Contions applied to each player?

A. They always play as partners (i.e., they win or lose jointly).

2.4 If Italy or Russia remain neutral, objective hexes under their control are still counted in Axis/Allied objective totals in a two-player game, and toward Italian/Russian victory levels in a multi-player game.

2.5 In a multi-player game, a player may withdraw from the game at any time by assigning play of his major power to another player participating in his alliance. As players withdraw, the game may ultimately become a two player game in which normal two-player victory conditions apply. However, in cases where one player controls two or more powers in a game still governed by multi-player victory conditions that player must immediately abide by the victory conditions of the nation he controls which currently controls the most objective hexes (his choice in case of a tie). Although he continues to control the forces of the other powers under his command, that power no longer is considered for victory determination purposes other than by its indirect influence on the victory criteria of the determinant powers.

2.5 {4ER, 18:5:19, GG:44} Does this rule also apply when a player *begins* a multi-player scenario controlling two powers

A. Yes

3. THE SCENARIO CARDS—

3.1 The scenario cards for Germany, Russia, Britain and Italy contain information for the Campaign Game and for the 1939 scenario on one side; for the 1942 and 1944 scenarios on the other. The French and American cards have scenario information on one side, and frequently used charts on the other. Information pertinent to the 1939 and 1942 scenarios is printed in black; that pertinent to the Campaign Game and the 1944 scenario is in red. The U.S. 1942 information is also used for the U.S. when playing the Campaign Game or 1939 scenario.

3.2 Each card contains a BRP track which players may use to record BRP levels by moving each nation's three BRP counters along the 100's, 10's and 1's lines. Players may find it more satisfactory to keep a written running record of BRP's—such record is immune to table-jostling and is much more useful in providing reliable answers to "Did I subtract my BRP's for that Offensive Option yet?" and like questions.

3.3 CONTENT OF THE CARDS:

3.31 Each card shows the amount of BRP's a nation begins each scenario with, and its BRP growth rate percentage. The latter is used to increase BRP's during Year Start Sequences.

3.32 "Duration" defines the length of the scenario.

3.33 "Situation" shows what nations are at war at scenario start, and with whom. No BRP's are paid out to attain these states of war.

3.34 "Order of Deployment" indicates the sequence in which the various nations make their opening placement of their forces prior to play.

3.35 "Deployment Limits" may specify minimum forces which a nation must place in a given location or area. These minimum forces may be added to, subject to stacking limits where applicable, but they may not be altered: Britain could not place a 5-4 air unit in Malta instead of the 1-4 that is specified—but Britain could place a second ground unit in Malta to augment the required 1-3 infantry. Britain, if she started a 4-5 armor in Egypt, could not use the 2-5 armor elsewhere. With the exception of certain Russian units which must stay in place until approached by Axis forces at war with Russia, Deployment Limits apply only to opening setup—forces may move freely thereafter.

3.35 {18:5:19, GG:44} May the Russian garrison unit started in Moscow, Kharkov, etc. at game start be removed as Attrition losses or voluntarily destroyed before the Germans have come within the required five hexes?
A. No.

3.35 {4ER} What if Russia is able to attack a non-garrisoned Finland while still not at war with Germany, and wishes to attack out of Leningrad. Could the required garrison unit in Leningrad attack out of the city?
A. Yes, but it could not advance or move out of the city, and if eliminated, it must be replaced in Leningrad in the next Unit Construction Phase.
[Compiler's note: despite the number, this question appears in the fourth-edition rules in the rightmost column, near the bottom.]

3.35 {18:5:19} What if Russia is able to attack a non-garrisoned Finland while still not at war with Germany, and wishes to attack out of Leningrad. Could the required garrison unit in Leningrad attack out of the city?
A. Yes, but it could not advance or move out of the city, and if eliminated, it must be replaced in Leningrad in the next Unit Construction Phase.

3.35 {GG:44} What if Russia is able to attack a non-garrisoned Finland while still not at war with Germany, and wishes to attack out of Leningrad. Could the required garrison unit in Leningrad attack out of the city?
A. Yes, but it could not advance after combat. If eliminated, it must be reconstructed in Leningrad in that same player turn. It could not be taken as an exchange loss unless Russia could not meet the required loss in any other way.

3.36 "Control" shows those geographical areas, if any, that a nation controls in addition to its homeland. Its opening setup of units may be only in those controlled areas: Britain could not open Fall 1939 with units already in France, nor Italy with units in Hungary, etc. But Britain could move units into France; and Italy, if actively allied with Germany, could move units into Hungary on the opening turn, with the permission of the French/German players respectively.

3.36 {23:4:46} The German 1942 scenario card says, "at least one armor and one infantry unit in Libya"—a sanctioned violation of Rule 3.36. May more German units be placed in Libya during set-up?
A. No.

3.37 "Two Player Victory Conditions" provide a ready reference to the

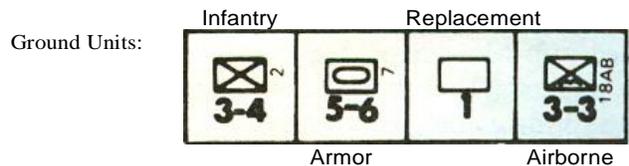
victory conditions of the scenario for a two-player game. Lastly, additional notes pertinent to the nation/scenario may appear at the bottom.

3.38 The "Force Pool" shows the "At Start" units which a player places during initial setup, and "Allowable Builds" which he may spend BRPs to construct during his Unit Construction phases. Units eliminated during the game are returned to the Force Pool, where they immediately become Allowable Builds. (Note that France, for instance, has no air units shown as Allowable Builds—but eliminated French air units would return to the Force Pool and automatically become Allowable Builds.) *EXCEPTIONS:* under some circumstances (31.4) airborne units are eliminated permanently and not returned to their Force Pool. Special restrictions (29.8) govern the reconstruction of naval losses.

3.39 "Surplus SW" appears only on the 1942 and 1944 scenario cards of Germany, Britain, and the U.S. This is the amount of Strategic Warfare factors which that nation already has to start that scenario with. This amount can be increased by Strategic Warfare builds during that Year Start Sequence.

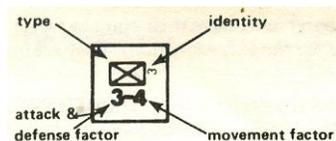
"Foreign Aid" appears only on the 1939 and Campaign Game scenario cards of powers eligible to give foreign aid (33.6). The countries listed on the scenario card are those which that power is eligible to give aid to.

3.4 When beginning a game, a player should place his Allowable Builds on the Force Pool section of his scenario card. The BRP tracks, if not used to keep track of BRPs, are a handy place for substitute air/naval counters, air base counters and bridgehead counters. Players will notice a few extra Italian ground units and American fleets in the counter mix; these are for use in the event certain variant (33.4) counters are drawn.

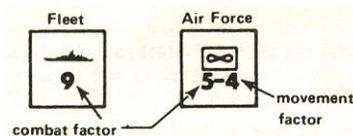


4. COUNTERS—

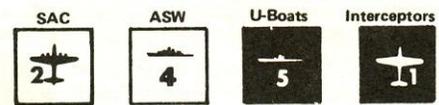
4.1 Ground and air unit counters show a combat factor as the first (left) number on the counter, followed by a movement factor. *EXCEPTION:* replacement counters, which cannot move, show only a combat factor.



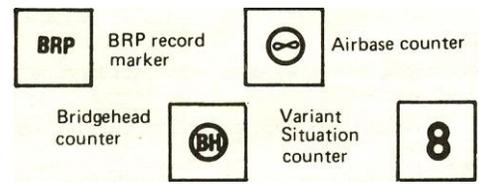
4.2 Naval unit counters show only a combat factor; their range is unlimited within their front.



4.3 Strategic Warfare counters (submarines, ASW, SAC bombers, and interceptors) show only a number representing the amount of strength.



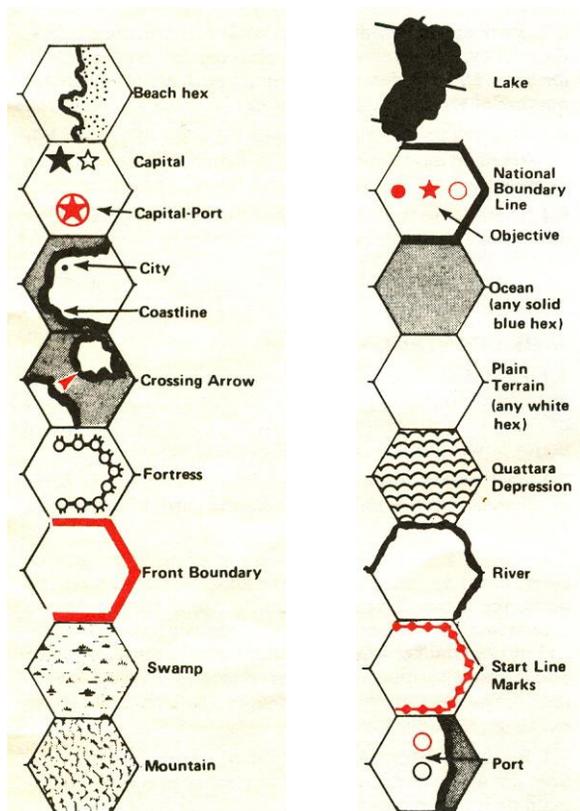
4.4 Ten numbered variant counters are provided for use in the variant draw (33). Counters "6" & "9" should be underlined before use; they are indistinguishable otherwise.



4.5 BRP counters are markers for use with each nation's BRP tracks on their scenario cards (France and the U.S. share the white BRP counters). Year and season counters are provided for the Time Track on the mapboard. Airbase and bridgehead counters are explained later.

5. TERRAIN & THE MAPBOARD—

5.1 **GRID COORDINATES:** Each hex of the hexgrid superimposed over the mapboard may be located by a specific grid coordinate reference. Each row of hexes running East-West has been given a specific letter designation which has been printed on both the East-West map edges. For example, the third row from the top is row C and contains both Oslo and Bergen. A second reference is composed of numbered rows running diagonally NW-SE. *Examples:* Lisbon is V8, Marrakech is EE2, Dublin H22, Rome Y22, Berlin L31, Helsinki D41, Moscow H47, and Perma D61.



5.2 **PLAYABLE HEXES:** National borders (thick black lines) and geographic features have been rationalized to conform to the hexagonal grid. Solid gray hexes are not playable. Switzerland, for example, is impassable to all units—both ground and air. All other hexes not printed in gray are playable.

5.3 **LAND/SEA HEXES:** Land terrain is defined as the white area inside the black coastal shoreline bordering all bodies of water. The black shoreline is not considered sufficient area in itself to allow ground movement or combat across a hexside. Hexsides must contain white land area on both sides to allow normal ground movement or combat across them. Similarly, sea or lake hexsides are defined as any hexside containing blue on both sides of the hexside, provided that "blue" is not solely attributable to a river. Naval movement is allowed only across sea hexsides. (*EXCEPTION:* 47.1). Where the red front boundary follows a coastline it is treated as sea for purposes of this rule.'

5.31 Hexsides which are partially sea and partially land may be considered both land and sea for any purposes.

5.32 Any completely black land mass is considered impassable to ground units. Thus, the islands east of Athens (DD28 & CC28) do not exist for game purposes. Similarly, the extended northernmost peninsula on the Caspian Sea in W52 is non-existent for game purposes and included on the map only for aesthetic purposes. Any ground unit in W52 would be considered on the southernmost peninsula. F33 is not considered a one hex island (5.6) even though the G32 portion of the island is unplayable.

5.33 **LAND MOVEMENT:** Terrain never slows ground units, however,

all water hexsides (ocean or lake) may not be crossed except at a Crossing Arrow or with naval assistance.

5.34 Units are not "adjacent" for purposes of Pass Option movement and Strategic Redeployment when they are separated by all-water (non-river) hexsides including those containing Crossing Arrows.

5.35 The *Zones of Control* (hereafter referred to as *ZOC*, see 8.2) of armor units do not extend across all-water hexsides including those containing Crossing Arrows. These ZOC do extend across rivers.

5.36 **CROSSING ARROWS:** Red Crossing Arrows permit ground units to cross or have combat (either Offensive or Attrition) in either direction. They occur only in Denmark (3), Scotland (1), the Turkish Straits (2), the strait of Kerch (1), and the strait of Messina (1).

5.37 At a number of points, the coastline is considered to pass exactly over the intersection of three hexes. *EXAMPLES:* J30/K29/K30; direct land movement is not possible between J30 and K29, but the North Sea does not extend into K30. GG33/HH32/HH33; direct naval movement is not possible between GG33 and HH33, but there is no land in HH32. Such differentiation should be obvious in most cases, but for those who insist on being specific other instances are listed below.

C44/D43/D44	J28/K27/K28	E26/E27/F26	U18/V17/V18
W43/W44/X43	J27/K26/K27	C27/C28/D27	U21/V20/V21
X43/Y42/Y43	K32/K33/L32	K23/K24/L23	I22/I23/J22
Y19/Z18/Z19	A34/A35/B34	K24/L23/L24	M23/N22/N23
U38/U39/V38	Z19/AA18/AA19	MM30/MM31/NN30	EE30/EE31/FF30
S40/T39/T40	C35/D34/D35	G42/H41/H42	I37/J36/J37

[Compiler's note: Here is the same list, sorted:]

A34/A35/B34	I22/I23/J22	K32/K33/L32	W43/W44/X43
C27/C28/D27	I37/J36/J37	M23/N22/N23	X43/Y42/Y43
C35/D34/D35	J27/K26/K27	S40/T39/T40	Y19/Z18/Z19
C44/D43/D44	J28/K27/K28	U18/V17/V18	Z19/AA18/AA19
E26/E27/F26	K23/K24/L23	U21/V20/V21	EE30/EE31/FF30
G42/H41/H42	K24/L23/L24	U38/U39/V38	MM30/MM31/NN30

5.4 CITIES:

5.41 Capitals (any city designated by a star, including those in colonies) may not be selected for Attrition occupation. The capitals of countries serve as supply sources if their country has combat units represented in the game.

5.42 Objectives (any city printed in red) may not be selected for Attrition occupation.

5.43 Ports (any city designated by an open, non-solid black or red circle) may base naval units. Capital-ports (Athens & Stockholm) function as both a port and a capital. Brindisi is on the east coast of AA25; fleets may traverse it only via the easternmost of the two water areas within the hex. Similarly, Plymouth is on the southern coast of its peninsula (K21).

5.44 All other cities, designated by black dots, have no special significance except for their ability to base air units. Cities have no effect on defensive combat strength; doubling, etc. is determined by the other terrain in the hex. The term "city", wherever used in the rules, always includes ports and capitals.

5.5 FORTRESSES:

5.51 Malta and Gibraltar are always fortress hexes. All other fortress hexes lose their fortress status permanently as soon as occupied by an enemy unit. Additionally, Maginot Line fortresses lose their status upon the fall of France.

5.51 & 5.53 {23:4:46} If the Allies occupied a West Wall hex before 1944, but the Axis control it at 1944 YSS, does it become a fortress hex?

A. Yes.

5.51 & 5.56 & 5.58 {23:4:46} Can a hex which has lost its fortress status be occupied on an Attrition option? Can an unsupplied Sevastopol?

A. Yes. Yes.

5.52 Maginot Line hexes are not treated as fortress hexes in the 1942- and 1944 scenarios.

5.53 The West Wall (Stuttgart, Frankfurt, Bonn, and Essen) is shown with gray fortress symbols on the board. West Wall hexes do not become actual fortress hexes until the start of 1944, and then only if under Axis control.

5.53 see 5.51 & 5.53

5.54 Fortress hexes are quadrupled against attack from any direction, even where all hexsides do not show fortification symbols.

5.55 Fortress hexes serve as limited supply sources. (*EXCEPTION:* 27.13). They supply all units which begin their turn on the fortress hex.

5.55 & 15.4 & 27.13 {GG:44} May Russia place new construction in Leningrad if Leningrad is isolated?

A. Yes; the same goes for Sevastopol, and Maginot and West Wall hexes, so long as they retain their fortress status.

5.56 Fortress hexes may not be selected for occupation during an Attrition Option.

5.56 see [5.51](#) & [5.56](#) & [5.58](#)

5.57 The ZOC (8.2) of armor units do not extend into fortress hexes, but they do extend out of fortress hexes.

5.58 Leningrad and Sevastopol are under Russian control at the start of the 1942 and 1944 scenario, but Sevastopol is considered a fortress only so long as the Russian player controls another port on the Black Sea, or can trace a line of supply from Sevastopol to the East edge of the board (across the Kerch Strait, U40-U41, if necessary) at the start of his player turn.

5.58 {19:4:46, GG:44} Must the other port on the Black Sea be able to trace a normal supply line?

A. Yes.

5.58 {19:4:46, GG:44} Is Sevastopol a fortress in the 1944 scenario?

A. Yes.

5.58 {23:4:46} Sevastopol loses its supply line, but the Axis don't occupy it. Russia restores the supply line. Does Sevastopol regain fortress status?

A. Yes, Axis forces must control it to make loss permanent.

5.58 see [5.51](#) & [5.56](#) & [5.58](#)

5.6 ISLANDS: Islands which have beach hexes may be invaded only at those beach hexes. Islands so small that they show no white terrain, only black, are not invadable or playable. One hex, white islands (and Gibraltar) can be invaded provided they do not have a port containing a 9 factor enemy fleet. See also 27.24 and 29.67.

5.6 {18:5:19} Is Scapa Flow in Northern Scotland which is reachable by a red crossing arrow considered a one hex island for purposes of this rule?

A. Yes.

5.6 {GG:44} Is Scapa Flow considered a one-hex island for purposes of this rule, in spite of the red crossing arrow?

A. Yes. While on the subject, the northern tip of Denmark is *not* considered a one-hex island. See 29.431 regarding the other two Danish islands.

5.7 TERRAIN EFFECTS ON LAND COMBAT: The various terrain features on the map are illustrated in the Terrain Effects Chart.

TERRAIN EFFECTS CHART

Terrain	Effect on Combat	Effect on Movement
Beach	Defenders tripled against Seaborne Invasion. Otherwise doubled.	Ground units can be landed using Seaborne Invasion.
Capitals	Can't be selected for Attrition advance after combat.	None, other than use as an air base.
Capital-port	Can't be selected for Attrition advance after combat.	None other than use as an air & naval base.
City	None	Can be used as an air base.
Coastline	None allowed between hexes connected only by coastline.	
Crossing Arrow	Defenders are tripled vs attacks across a crossing arrow hexside	Ground units may cross hexsides indicated in both directions.
Fortress	Defense is quadrupled. Can't be taken by Attrition or Isolation.	None, ZOC have no effect on Fortress hexes.
Front Boundary	Units crossing or attacking across must abide by restrictions of Option chosen on Front moved into or attacked.	
Lake	Not allowed across all-water hexsides.	
Swamp	Defense is tripled.	None
Mountains	Defense is tripled.	None
National Boundary Line	Cannot attack or move across while country is neutral. If neutral, a Declaration of War must be declared before crossing or attacking into it. If already at war or conquered there is no effect.	

Objective	Can't be selected for Attrition advance after combat.	Can be used as base.
Ocean	Only special naval & air combat allowed.	Can be crossed only by fleets, and air units which can stage 8 hexes or less over it to another base.
Plain Terrain	Double Defense	None
Quattara Depression	None allowed across completely Quattara hexsides.	
River	Defense is tripled against attacks from across river.	None
Start Line Marks	None	Crossing such lines in France, Rumania, & Poland has the same effect as crossing a National Boundary.

[Compiler's note: *Quattara Depression* is misspelled on the map and in every reference in the rules.]

5.71 Defending ground units have their combat factor at least doubled in any terrain (*see* 44.1 *for the only exception*). They are quadrupled when in a fortress hex.

5.72 Defending ground units have their combat factor tripled when behind a river, or a hexside crossing arrow and all attackers are on the opposite side. A partisan unit cannot untriple such an attack, but any other ground unit (including airborne) can. Defenders are also tripled when on a mountain or swamp hex, or on a beach hex when defending against seaborne invasion.

5.73 Beach hexes are not tripled if attacked by land only, but if seaborne invasion is being attempted, whether or not in conjunction with land attack, nothing will untriple them.

5.74 Defensive benefits are not cumulative; a unit on a mountain behind a river is only tripled. Terrain effects on movement and combat are summarized on the Terrain Effects Chart.

5.75 Neither combat or movement is allowed across an all Quattara hexside (NN25-NN26, NN26-NN27, MM26-NN26, and MM27-NN26).

5.75 {19:4:46} Can supply be traced across Quattara Depression hexsides?

A. No. (Not covered previously that I can see).

5.75 {GG:44} Can supply be traced across Quattara Depression hexsides?

A. No.

5.8 Solid red front boundaries separate the mapboard into three fronts; Eastern, Western and Mediterranean. These boundaries are of significance to the choice of options by a player and to naval capabilities.

6. STACKING—

6.1 The basic stacking limit is two ground units per hex, regardless of their combat strength. *EXCEPTIONS:*

6.11 Three ground units may stack in London, but only if all three are British.

6.12 Airborne units are never counted for stacking limit purposes and may be added to any legal stack. This is true even if the unit moves like normal infantry, not making a paratroop (*EXCEPTION:* 31.5; Seaborne Invasion).

6.13 The defender may temporarily overstack if forced to do so when retreating during an Attrition Option. He must remedy the overstack during his own next movement phase; if unable to do so he must eliminate excess units of his choice.

6.14 Armor units may overstack on a Breakthrough (14.31) hex. Such overstack must be remedied by the end of the attacker's Strategic Redeployment phase, or excess units of his choice must be eliminated.

6.15 Five ground units may stack on a Bridgehead (9.5) counter. There is no increase in the stacking capacity of a Bridgehead for being in London (6.11).

6.2 Stacking of naval and air units is unlimited while at sea/in the air. (*EXCEPTION:* 34.32). (*See* 28.1 and 29.11 *for stacking capacities of naval and air bases.*) The presence of naval or air units in a hex does not reduce the number of ground units that may stack in that hex (*EXCEPTION:*34.36).

6.3 Stacking limits do not apply to ground units while moving; nor while embarked on naval units, but no unit may end its Combat phase or its turn so embarked.

6.4 There are some restrictions on units of allied nations stacking together in the same hex. (*See 34.3, 36.1, and 45.1*).

6.4 {4ER, 18:5:19} Can Minor Active Allies and the major power they are allied with stack together?

A. Yes.

6.4 {GG:44} Can Minor Active Allies and the major power they are allied with stack together?

A. Yes. Rule 6.4 makes cross-reference to prohibitions; anything not prohibited is allowable.

7. HEX CONTROL—

7.1 Each land hex is controlled by the last nation to have ground units on it or to pass ground units through it. *EXCEPTION:* (24.2), initial conquest of a major or minor country. A unit which traverses hexes controlled by a major power ally does *not* change the control of those hexes.

7.1 {25:3:58} After United States' entry, are British-controlled hexes jointly controlled by both Britain and the United States?

A. Of course.

7.2 Each nation automatically controls its own hexes, as well as the hexes of all areas listed as under its control on the scenario card, at the start of each scenario.

7.3 When "EX" occurs in combat and attacker loses his entire ground force, or for any other reason fails to occupy the attacked hex with ground units, the attacked hex remains in the control of the defender. Thus a capital or objective hex, or any other, does not necessarily pass to the control of the attacker when its defenders are eliminated. The attacker must also advance a ground unit into the hex in order to control it. If an airborne unit drops atop enemy defenders and both sides are eliminated in an exchange, the defender still controls the hex.

7.4 Placing an enemy-controlled hex in the ZOC of a friendly armor unit does not affect its status. A ground unit must physically pass over it or remain on it in order to effect control.

8. ZONES OF CONTROL (ZOCs)—

8.1 Every ground unit exerts a zone of control (*hereafter referred to as ZOC*) on the hex it occupies.

8.2 Armor units, only, exert an additional ZOC on the six hexes adjacent to the hex they occupy, with some qualifications:

8.2.1 Armor ZOCs do not extend across all-water (not river) hexsides, across hexsides containing crossing arrows, nor into fortress hexes.

8.2.2 Armor units inside a fortress hex do exert a ZOC outside their fortress hex. Armor ZOC *do* extend across rivers and across the Suez Canal.

8.3 Zones of control adversely affect enemy movement and supply. *See 13.3 and 27.22.*



9. BRIDGEHEADS—

9.1 A Bridgehead counter may, at attacker's option, be placed on:

9.1.1 A hex successfully occupied by seaborne invasion. The hex need not have contained a defending unit, but it must have been controlled by a hostile major or minor power when invaded, and must have been occupied by a surviving, attacking, seaborne invading unit (or a just dropped airborne unit attacking in conjunction with the seaborne invasion; *see 29.432*).

9.11 & 29.436 {4ER, 18:5:19} Assuming the Germans *intervene* in Norway following a British invasion by a seaborne invasion of their own on D35 can they place a bridgehead counter on the beach hex they invaded?

A. Yes, the beach does not become friendly to them until they actually intervene in the form of the seaborne invasion.

9.11 & 29.436 {GG:44} Assuming the Germans *intervene* in Norway following a British invasion by a seaborne invasion of their own on D35, can the German player place a bridgehead counter on the beach hex invaded?

A. Yes, the beach does not become friendly to them until Germany actually intervenes via the seaborne invasion.

9.1.2 A tripled river hex or crossing arrow hex successfully occupied by Offensive Option attack. Bridgehead counters may be placed on Maginot/West Wall hexes even though the defender was quadrupled rather than tripled, provided that the attack was entirely cross-river. They may also be placed when an airborne drop untriples defenders who would otherwise have been tripled against cross-river attack.

9.12 & 14.4 {4ER, 18:5:19} Can armor attack a vacant hex across a river and create a Bridgehead counter?

A. No—if there is no defender in the hex the defense is not tripled and therefore a Bridgehead is not eligible to be placed.

9.12 & 14.4 {GG:44} Can armor attack a vacant hex across a river and place a Bridgehead counter?

A. No—there is no defender in the hex to be tripled.

9.2 Attacker places the Bridgehead counter, if he wishes, immediately upon the post-combat advance of his first ground unit into an eligible hex. He may then continue post-combat advance with other eligible units, up to the Bridgehead stacking limit. An attacker who chooses not to place a Bridgehead counter in an eligible hex may not later change his mind and place one there.

9.3 Bridgehead counters in play are limited to those provided with the game: five Allied, three Axis.

9.4 A Bridgehead counter may be removed whenever the player who placed it desires—even if it is to switch that counter for use in another invasion. The player could even await the outcome of the impending invasion before deciding whether to remove an existing Bridgehead in order to accommodate the new invasion. It must be removed when solely occupied by the enemy. It also must be removed at the end of the owner's player turn if it is both no longer required to provide supply (i.e. any units previously supplied through the Bridgehead could trace supply by other means) and no enemy ground units are within four hexes by land. Any units left overstacked at the end of the owner's player turn by the removal of a Bridgehead are eliminated (owner's choice of units to be eliminated).

9.4 {19:4:46} Assume a British invasion of Casablanca into an Axis controlled Mediterranean Oran and environs such that the bridgehead counter must now be removed. Must it be removed even though doing so will double the number of fleets required to supply the Allied force (27.26)?

A. No—bridgeheads need not be removed if in so doing the supply situation of the invading forces is worsened.

9.4 {GG:44} Assume an Allied invasion of Casablanca and later advance to Oran. Must they remove the Casablanca bridgehead even though doing so will double (27.26) the number of supply fleets needed?

A. No—bridgeheads need not be removed if the player can demonstrate that doing so would worsen his supply situation.

9.5 Five ground units (plus, of course, airborne) may occupy a Bridgehead. Only two may attack during an Offensive Option (*EXCEPTION:* three if all three are British in London). All five are counted if in contact with the enemy during an Attrition Option. All five defend against opponent's Offensive Option; all five counterattack when required.

9.5 {19:4:46} If an airborne unit is on a bridgehead can the number of units allowed to attack out of it be increased to 3?

A. Yes. [Compiler's note: I believe that the airborne unit must be one of the three.]

9.5 {GG:44} If an airborne unit is on a bridgehead, can the number of units allowed to attack out of it be increased to three?

A. Yes. *See 31.5.*

9.5 {GG:44} A bridgehead counter is adjacent to a front boundary and also adjacent to enemy units on both fronts. One or two units on the counter make an Offensive Option attack on one front. May all other units on the counter be counted in an Attrition Option on the other front?

A. Yes.

9.5 & 14.37 {19:4:46} Can more than 5 units occupy a bridgehead and more than 2 attack it from it when using it as a Breakthrough hex for Exploitation?

A. Yes.

9.5 & 14.37 {GG:44} Can more than five units occupy a bridgehead and more than two attack from it when using it as a Breakthrough hex?

A. Yes.

9.6 Bridgeheads may not be selected for occupation during an Attrition Option.

9.7 In a multi-player game, any player may place a Bridgehead counter, provided his side has unused ones, with or without the concurrence of his allies. Neutral Russia and Italy before active alliance with the Allies/Axis may not use more than one Bridgehead counter without permission from their future ally(s).

9.7 {19:4:46} Must permission to place more than one bridgehead counter be unanimous?

A. If it isn't, 51.5 applies.

9.7 {GG:44} Must permission to place more than one bridgehead counter be unanimous?

A. If it isn't, 5.15 applies. [Compiler's note: 51.5 as above]



10. THE YEAR START SEQUENCE (YSS)—

10.1 The Year Start Sequence consists of *Strategic Warfare* (hereafter referred to as *SW*) resolution, BRP calculations; and SW construction. It takes place between the end of each Winter turn and the start of each Spring turn. No *Year Start Sequence* (hereafter referred to as *YSS*) precedes the start of either the Campaign Game or the 1939 scenario. The 1942 and 1944 scenarios are preceded by Strategic Warfare Construction (10.4) only. In the 1942 scenario the Axis may play variant 6, if held, before Strategic Warfare construction.

10.2 STRATEGIC WARFARE (SW) RESOLUTION:

10.21 Both sides reveal their SW counters in the SW box. Factors are mutually eliminated in an even one for one exchange (ASW for submarines; interceptors for SAC) until only one type of each pair of SW counters remains; i.e. either ASW or submarines—or interceptors or SAC. In the 1943 YSS each ASW factor can be exchanged for 1½ submarine factors. In the 1944 and '45 YSS, each ASW factor can be exchanged for two submarine factors. Fractional losses are resolved in favor of the Axis player. The excess factors surviving these mutual eliminations remain in play, determine BRP losses, and are returned to the SW box to await the next YSS.

10.22 Each surviving submarine factor eliminates three BRPs from the remaining British and/or American BRPs. (German player decides which or both, but he cannot choose to eliminate American BRPs before the 1943 YSS.)

10.23 Each surviving SAC factor eliminates two BRPs from the remaining German BRPs. In addition during any YSS in which SAC inflicts BRP losses, the German player must remove one of his 5-4 air units from the board in exchange for an additional five interceptor factors for use in Strategic Warfare. These interceptor factors are *in addition* to any constructed using the 10% BRP SW limit. The 5-4 air unit which is removed may not be rebuilt (in essence it is subtracted from the Force Pool Allowable Builds). If no 5-4 air unit is available to be removed it must be built during the Spring Construction phase and immediately transformed into interceptor factors for the SW box. In any subsequent YSS that Germany again suffers SAC-inflicted BRP losses, yet another 5-4 air unit is removed and exchanged in similar fashion. On the other hand, in any subsequent YSS in which Germany suffers no SAC-inflicted BRP losses, one 5-4 air unit may be returned to the German Force Pool. However, the German Force Pool can never be expanded beyond the six units with which it starts the game.

10.24 If Britain is conquered, her SW counters remain in play *if* America has entered the war. If America has not entered, British SW counters are reduced prior to SW resolution as follows: if conquered on a Fall turn, ¼ (rounded down) of the British SW factors are removed; Summer, ½; Spring ¾; on a Winter turn there is no reduction. If both ASW and SAC counters are involved, the fractional reduction is applied separately to each. The turn of conquest is the game turn in which Britain fails to recapture London. Should any British SW factors survive the subsequent SW resolution, they are nevertheless removed from the game (after inflicting BRP and/or submarine losses).

10.3 BASIC RESOURCE POINT (BRP) CALCULATIONS:

10.31 BRPs are calculated separately for each major power. Begin with

a nation's Base determined in the previous YSS, or from the start of the scenario as appropriate. If a nation has unused BRPs remaining from the previous year, multiply them by the nation's growth rate, drop fractions, and add the result to the Base. EXCEPTION: No BRP Base growth occurs in 1939. Omit this calculation from the 1940 YSS.

10.32 If, on the other hand, SW reduced a nation's BRPs below zero, subtract the deficit from the Base. (If the nation was already below zero before SW losses, subtract only that part of its deficit that resulted from SW.) SW losses below 0 are the only way to reduce a BRP Base.

EXAMPLE: If the BRP level is -3 and SW losses are -6, the nation would forfeit 9 BRPs from its BRP start this coming year, and 6 BRPs every year thereafter (although this ongoing loss may be reversed by subsequent growth).

10.33 The resulting figure is the nation's new BRP Base for the coming year. (The 1940 figure will always be the same as the 1939 Campaign Game starting Base, because neither growth nor SW losses can occur.) Record this figure on scrap paper for reference in the next YSS.

10.34 To the new BRP Base, add the BRP value of all active Minor Allies, attacked but unconquered Minors for which the country has intervened, and all conquered countries and colonies not already controlled by the nation at the start of the scenario.

10.341 A conquered major power yields only half (rounded down) of the BRPs it began the scenario with to the conquering nation.

10.342 If a previously-controlled country or colony was just captured from the nation during the last half of the Winter turn, add it on also. These BRPs must be immediately subtracted if the nation does not regain control during its coming Spring turn.

10.342 & 24.3 {4ER, 18:5:19} If these "temporary" BRPs are indeed lost in the next turn after the YSS, would there be any effect on SW counters already built? Would the per turn BRP spending limit be immediately reduced?

A. No

10.342 & 24.3 {GG:44} If these BRPs are indeed lost in the Spring turn, would there be any effect on SW counters already built? Would the pre-turn BRP spending limit be immediately reduced?

A. No. No.

10.343 Never include a territory controlled by the nation at the beginning of the game/scenario, not even if lost and reconquered. EXCEPTIONS: Minor Allies (25.3). A major power that has been conquered during the scenario being played does, if later reconquered by its own side, yield BRPs to the controlling power.

EXAMPLE: Germany conquers France in a Campaign Game. During the 1944 YSS, the US controls Paris and therefore receives 42 BRPs for the reconquest.

10.344 BRPs are not gained by conquest (*EXCEPTION:* 10.37, although control of Leningrad and Moscow do not constitute a conquest) between YSS. For example, if Germany captures Denmark during the Spring 1940 turn Germany does not receive the 10 BRPs for its conquest until the 1941 YSS, and then only if it still controls Denmark.

10.345 BRP totals are always derived by adding conquests since the start of the scenario and allied minor country BRP totals to an existing BRP base. BRPs are never subtracted for loss of a country or colony *if* the nation started the scenario with that country or colony in its control—they are just added as per step 10.34.

10.35 In the 1940 YSS only; multiply any unused 1939 BRPs by the nation's growth rate, drop fractions and add to the 1940 BRP starting inventory. This does not change the nation's BRP Base which remains identical to the 1939 BRP Base.

10.36 If the nation ended the previous year with a BRP deficit due to involuntary losses, subtract that part of the deficit *not* caused by SW from the coming year's available BRPs. (No growth rate multiplication of deficits is performed.)

10.37 Germany may gain an additional 15 BRPs for control of Leningrad and/or Moscow during each YSS. Similarly, Russia loses 15 BRPs each during any YSS in which it does not control these cities. These additions are valid only if Russia has not surrendered to the Axis.

EXAMPLE:

Assume that in the 1940 YSS Germany has 50 BRPs remaining from 1939 and has also overrun Poland. The unused BRPs are multiplied by the German growth rate of 50%, yielding an additional 25 BRPs for 1940—the

other 25 being lost. When added to the Scenario BRP base for Germany, a total of 175 BRPs for the 1940 YSS is obtained. In addition, the 20 conquered Polish BRPs are added directly to the German BRP total giving the German player 195 BRPs for 1940. Germany's BRP inventory counters are moved to this figure and play resumes.

Assume that in the 1941 YSS Germany has 30 unused BRPs left and has conquered an additional 40 BRPs through conquest of Denmark, Belgium, the Netherlands, and Luxembourg. The unused BRPs are lost but provide a growth of 15 BRPs in this and any following YSS. Germany's new BRP base is 165. In addition, 40 BRPs are added to this total due to the recent conquests, plus 20 BRPs for Poland which Germany still controls. The German 1941 BRP total will be 225.

Assume that in the 1942 YSS Germany has no unused BRPs left and has managed to conquer only 25 additional BRPs by taking Eastern Europe from Russia. There will be no BRP growth in 1942. Furthermore, because the German player has lost ten BRPs to British Strategic Warfare success during this YSS, Germany's new yearly BRP base drops to 155 in addition to the effects of rule 10.23 on the German Force Pool. To this base the German player may now add the 85 "conquest" BRPs it now controls for a total of 240. To this, the German can add the 45 BRPs of Germany's Active Minor Allies which became active in the preceding year. Germany will have a total 1942 YSS BRP allocation of 285, although her base BRP figure will remain at 155.

Assume that in the 1943 YSS Germany has ten unused BRPs remaining and has conquered Leningrad and Moscow for an additional 30 BRPs by way of territorial conquest without losing any of her prior acquisitions. However, her SW losses have increased to 20 BRPs due to Allied bombing. The SW losses negate the German 10 BRP surplus and also reduces the German's yearly BRP Base to 145 (155 - 10 = 145). To this figure the German player can add 115 conquest BRPs and 45 BRPs for Germany's Active Minor Allies to derive a total 1943 YSS BRP allocation of 305.

10.4 STRATEGIC WARFARE CONSTRUCTION—

10.41 Germany, Britain and (commencing in the 1942 YSS) the United States may now each spend up to 10% of their total BRP allotment (fractions rounded down) to construct SW counters. (The U.S. uses the British SW counters).

10.42 BRP costs per constructed factor are shown on the BRP Costs Chart on the right side of the mapboard.

10.43 Germany may build only submarine and interceptor counters; the Allies may build only anti-submarine (ASW) and strategic bomber (SAC) counters.

10.44 New counters join counters surviving from the previous year's resolution in the SW box, face down, where they await SW resolution during the next YSS. (During the year, submarine and ASW counters may be moved to the Murmansk box. If desired, they could be initially placed in the Murmansk box when constructed.)

10.45 Instead of placing counters in the box, players may wish to record their mix of SW factors on a sheet of paper in order to prevent an opponent from making any deductions from the number of counters placed. The number of BRPs spent must be revealed in order to keep an accurate BRP record.

10.46 If BRP totals are close enough that SW expenditures could have an effect on which side plays first in the coming Spring turn, each side must write their spending decisions on a sheet of paper, revealing them to each other simultaneously.

10.47 SW construction occurs before the start of the Spring turn; BRPs spent thereon do not count toward the Spring turn spending limit (11.1)

10.5 1945 SW: The rules regarding the resolution of SW for the year 1945 are altered after the resolution of 1944 SW in the 1945 YSS and subsequent BRP level calculation.

10.51 At the end of the Spring 1945 game turn both sides reveal their SW Builds and resolve SW as if it were a normal YSS. Any BRP losses that result are quartered (fractions rounded down) and deducted immediately from the respective BRP inventories. These same BRP losses are inflicted again at the end of each game turn until the 1946 YSS or the end of the game.

10.52 Should the German player suffer BRP losses due to SW in the Spring 1945 turn, he must remove one 5-4 air unit from the board as per 10.23 except that the German gains no interceptor units for use in SW as a consequence until the next YSS. The German player need not remove any other units due to SW resolution during the remainder of 1945.

10.5 {4ER, 18:5:19} Since the Allies start the scenario with an excess of SAC units, must the Germans convert a 5-4 air unit into five factors of interceptors immediately?

A. No—although such action may be necessary after the Spring, 1945 turn or 1945 YSS turn as per 10.52.

10.5 {GG:44} Since the Allies start the scenario with an excess of SAC, must the Germans convert a 5-4 air unit into five factors of interceptors immediately?

A. No. See 10.1, fourth sentence. Such action may be necessary after the Spring 1945 turn or 1945 YSS or, per 10.52, after the Spring 1945 game turn.

11. BRP SPENDING LIMIT—

11.1 After SW construction BRPs have been subtracted, divide each nation's total remaining BRPs by two, dropping any fraction, and record it for reference. This figure is the maximum amount of BRPs that the nation may spend during any one player turn in the forthcoming year.

11.2 This half-of-total spending limit also applies from the start of each scenario. If a player holds a *variant counter* (33.4) which increases a nation's BRPs at the start of a scenario, he must play the counter during opening setup if he wishes to increase his spending limit during the first year of the scenario.

EXAMPLE: During the two 1939 turns (assuming no variant counters affecting BRPs are played) Britain could spend no more than 62 BRPs each turn, France no more than 42, Russia no more than 45, Germany no more than 75 and Italy no more than 37.

11.2 & 33.41, #9 {GG:44} If the Axis intend to play variant #9 during the opening setup, must it be played during Italian setup or can it be played during German setup?

A. Italian setup. If played during the German setup, it does not increase Italy's 1939 per-turn spending limit.

11.3 Involuntary losses of BRPs are disregarded in connection with this limit.

EXAMPLE: Britain's limit is 62; the Axis move first in the game turn and capture Gibraltar, immediately costing Britain 25 BRPs. Britain may still spend up to 62 BRPs in her own player turn if she has that many remaining.

11.4 A player may never take voluntary action which would exceed his limit or which would reduce his BRPs below zero. But note the following: Britain, with 15 BRPs remaining, has just lost a Free French colony for which she had received 5 BRPs at Year Start. Reconquest is impossible, no units are in position to attempt it; the BRPs are certain to be lost. Yet, Britain may elect to pay BRPs for an Offensive Option, because the 5 BRP loss, although inevitable, will not occur until the end of the British Combat phase. After her Combat phase, when the loss of the colony becomes official Britain would incur a 5 BRP deficit towards the start of the next YSS.

11.4 & 12.11 {GG:44} Germany has incurred a BRP deficit through loss of conquered territories and has a -8 BRP total at the beginning of a game turn. Italy has 15 BRPs remaining. Is the Axis total for initiative "15" or "7"?

A. 15.

12. SEQUENCE OF PLAY—

12.1 BRP LEVEL DETERMINATION AND ORDER OF PLAY:

12.11 Allied and Axis sides each total their remaining BRPs at the beginning of each game turn. The side with the higher total is considered to have the Initiative and plays first in the coming game turn. Should BRP totals be equal, the order of play from the previous turn prevails. *EXCEPTION:* Axis always moves first in the first turn of the 1939, 1942, and Campaign Game scenarios.

12.11 {4ER, 18:5:19} If Poland survives the first turn may Poland's BRPs be added to those of Britain & France for determination of initiative?

A. No, although if she survives the *second* turn Britain would receive her BRPs during 1940 YSS.

12.11 see 11.4 & 12.11

12.11 {GG:44} If Poland survives the first turn may Poland's BRPs be added to those of Britain or added to those of Britain and France for determination of initiative?

A. No, although if she survives the *second* turn Britain would receive her BRPs during 1940 YSS.

12.12 The side which played last in a game turn may be able to limit its BRP expenditures so as to be able to play first in the coming game turn,

thus getting what amounts to two turns in a row. This development is known as a turn "flip-flop" and offers exceptional opportunities as well as hazards to the side obtaining it.

12.13 Italian BRPs are always included in the Axis total and Germany and Italy conduct their turn together whether or not Italy has entered the war. Russian and American BRPs are not included in the Allied total until they are at war with Germany. However, Russia and the western Allies conduct their turn together throughout the game, even if a neutral Russia has a larger BRP total than the Axis.

12.14 American BRPs are included in the Allied total beginning with the summer 1942 turn (although U.S. declares war in the Spring, she has not yet done so at the beginning of the Spring 1942 turn). **EXCEPTION:** 50.22

12.15 Minor Ally BRPs are included in the BRP level of the controlling major power from the beginning of the player turn in which they are activated (Summer 1941 or thereafter per 33.63) or activated by variant counter 5. When activated by Allied attack plus Axis Intervention, their BRPs are added when Intervention occurs—but this will not be at the beginning of a turn.

12.16 Minor countries, if attacked but not yet conquered, and if their attacker's opponents have not yet Intervened (23), take a separate player turn of their own (Movement and Combat phases only) immediately after the invader's turn. Even if a turn flip-flop occurs, the minor does get such a separate turn between the attacker's turns.

12.2 DECLARATIONS OF WAR & OPTION DECLARATIONS:

12.21 Each major power must, at the start of its player turn, announce any Declarations of War (hereafter referred to as Do W) it is making that turn and pay their cost (10 BRPs on a minor country, 35 BRPs on a major power). (*See also rule 21.*) Forces of a neutral minor country which has had a DoW made against it are set up at this time by an opponent of the aggressor. *See 22.1.*

12.22 Each major power must next announce whether it is undertaking Offensive, Attrition, or Pass Options on each of the three fronts, and pay the 15 BRP cost for each front on which it announces Offensive Options. Each major power must select one, and only one, Option on each front.

12.23 A power may take an Attrition Option even though it will not engage in Attrition combat on that front. Contact with adjacent enemy ground units at the end of movement is necessary to engage in Attrition combat, but is not necessary to enter uncontrolled hexes. Therefore, a power may use an Attrition Option provided no allied major power is engaging in an Offensive Option on the same front.

12.24 A player selecting an Offensive Option must either make at least one ground combat attack, or conduct one offensive air or naval mission against the enemy. Undertaking any offensive air (28.41) or naval (29.312) mission satisfies this rule even if interception prevents the mission from being completed.

12.25 If a nation selects an Offensive or Attrition Option on a given front, its allies must either join in that Offensive or Attrition Option, or else pass. A nation may not select an Attrition Option while an ally selects an Offensive Option on the same front. In multi-player games, if allies cannot agree on the option to be used on a front, the player desiring an Offensive Option prevails providing he can meet the provisions of 12.24. His allies must either join in the Offensive Option or Pass on that front (**EXCEPTION:** Russia always determines the Allied option to be used on the Eastern Front once actively allied against the Axis). When allies join in conducting an Offensive Option, each ally participating must pay 15 BRPs. This restriction does not apply until an alliance is activated.

EXAMPLE: If Italy is not yet at war with the Allies she could take an Attrition vs a minor on the same front where Germany takes an Offensive vs the British, and vice versa.

12.26 Options must also be announced at this time for any minor countries which have been attacked by the opposing side but are not yet conquered.

12.261 If Intervention has taken place the minor country automatically conforms to the option chosen by its major power allies on that front.

12.262 If Intervention has not occurred the minor country may select any option. No one pays any BRPs if it takes an Offensive Option. The minor country immediately proceeds to its Movement and Combat phases before the major powers proceed further. If two or more minors are to

play at this time, the one with higher BRP value proceeds first with ties resolved by a roll of the die.

12.263 Option selection by the minor country, as well as movement and combat by its forces, are controlled by the opposing major power nearest to the minor country as determined by the number of hexes between the major and minor capitals except in the case of Poland whose forces are deployed by the British player.

12.3 An Offensive or Attrition Option turn contains Movement, Combat, Unit Construction, and Strategic Redeployment phases in that order. A Pass Option differs in having no Combat phase.

12.4 All allied nations conduct their turn simultaneously, first performing all of that side's movement on all three fronts, etc.

12.5 Before beginning his Movement phase, a player may voluntarily destroy any of his own units and return them to his Force Pool. **EXCEPTIONS:** French players before 1942, and airbase counters. An airborne unit destroyed under this rule is not eligible to be rebuilt unless it meets the criteria of 31.4. Any unit which is voluntarily destroyed may not be reconstructed during the same game turn.

13. THE OFFENSIVE OPTION—MOVEMENT PHASE—

13.1 A player may move all, some, or none of his units. Ground units may move up to the limit of their movement factor. Naval units may change base (but may not move to another front in so doing) and air units may stage. (*See 28.2 & 29.2*) German air, naval, and submarine units may move into or out of the Murmansk box. **EXCEPTIONS:** submarines may move out of Murmansk only during a Spring turn.

13.2 Terrain does not affect movement except for certain impassable hexsides (*see 5.2 & 5.32*). Otherwise, all land movement costs one movement-factor per unit per hex traversed.

13.3 The ZOC of hostile armor units does affect movement. It costs two extra movement factors, for a total of three, to leave a hex in the ZOC of hostile armor, or to move from one such hex to another. There is no extra cost to enter a ZOC. ZOC has no effect on movement of air and naval units.

13.4 Ground units may never move onto or through hexes occupied by hostile ground units, only around them. Airborne units may drop atop hostile ground units, however.

13.5 Movement factors are not transferable from one unit to another nor may they be accumulated from one turn to the next.

13.6 Ground and air units moving from one front to another must abide by all rules pertaining to the Option being employed on the front they enter. If being moved up to a frontal boundary to attack (by Offensive or Attrition combat) a hostile unit across the front boundary, they are moved according to the Option employed on the front they attack.

13.7 Naval units which change base during the Movement Phase are subject to possible Interception. Attacker must indicate all base changes he will attempt before defender makes Interception decisions. Base changes are made before any movement of air and ground units.

13.8 At the end of the Movement Phase, the moving player announces which, if any, of his fleets are committed to providing supply during that game turn (*see 27.23*) and inverts their counters. Note that if it is the second player turn of the game turn, any fleets so designated must not have Intercepted during the opponent's turn. Any inverted fleets are placed face up again at the end of the game turn.

13.8 & 27.44 {GG:44} Does rule 27.44 permit an unused fleet to be designated as a supply fleet during the SR Phase?

A. No. The "previously unused" fleet would have had to be designated as a supply fleet in the proper point in the Sequence of Play as per 13.8.

13.8 & 55 {23:4:46} This rule [13.8] and the Sequence of Play indicate that designation of supply fleets is done at the end of the Movement Phase. How then can a base change provide supply to unsupplied units and permit them to move as 27.231 states?

A. Rule 13.8 and the Sequence of Play are in error; 55.II.7.c and 7.d should be interchanged.

14. OFFENSIVE OPTION—COMBAT PHASE—

14.1 During the Combat phase the following sequence is followed:

14.11 Attacker announces all naval and air missions (less interceptions and missions which may take place during exploitation) he is performing and places naval and air units accordingly. All *Counterair missions* (28.43) are resolved. Attacker need not commit himself to any specific attacks at this time.

14.12 Defender announces any allocations of *Defensive Air Support* (hereafter referred to as *DAS*), any air attacks on naval forces at sea, and any naval Interception attempts.

14.13 Attacker announces any air Interception missions and any air attacks on, or naval Interceptions of, defender's naval interceptors. These are resolved. Defender's naval Interceptions are then resolved.

14.14 Successful *Sea Transport missions* (29.42) are concluded and the naval units returned to their base.

14.15 Attacker may make airborne drops.

14.16 Attacker announces and resolves on the *Combat Results Table* (hereafter referred to as *CRT*) located on the mapboard all ground attacks he desires to make, in whatever order he chooses. He may resolve each attack he announces before he announces his next attack. Exploiting units are moved to breakthrough hexes. Further details follow in 14.3.

14.17 Air attacks on naval forces in port are resolved.

14.18 *Exploitation* (14.32) movement is made. Airborne drops and offensive and defensive air (but not naval) activity by uncommitted units may again take place at this time. Exploitation attacks are resolved. See 14.2 and 14.3.

14.19 See the Naval (29) and Air Warfare (28) sections and the Airborne rules (31) for further details on their combat.

14.2 DETAILS OF GROUND COMBAT:

14.21 Attacker may attack with all, some, or none of his ground units which are adjacent to (or on top of in the case of airborne units) enemy ground units. *EXCEPTION:* Replacement counters, even when adjacent to the enemy, may not attack except as a part of a CA result. An attacker is never forced to attack except when he has made an airborne drop on top of enemy ground units or has received a CA result from a defender's counterattack.

14.22 Combat factors of attacking units are always basic. Defending unit combat factors are generally doubled, tripled, or quadrupled. (See 5.7.)

14.23 All defending ground units in a hex must be attacked collectively, combat factors added together, as if they were one unit. Attacker may not attack them separately. Conversely, attacker's units in a given hex need not all attack the same hex; one unit could attack in a northeasterly direction for example while another attacked to the southeast or did not attack at all. Attacker's units in one hex may attack units in two or more adjacent hexes, treating it as one attack. All attacking units must be adjacent to (or on top of) all the defending units they are attacking. In such an attack, any air units conducting Ground Support or DAS may be placed on any of the hexes being attacked. No ground unit may ever "split" its combat factors, all must be applied to one attack. Aside from CRT dictated CAs, a unit may not be attacked more than once per player turn except as a result of a subsequent exploitation (including airborne landings) combat. The sole exception is 45.3

14.23 {4ER, 18:5:19} May "attacker's units in one hex attack units in two or more adjacent hexes" if such defending units are on different fronts (even assuming Offensive Options on both) or is the attacker precluded by 20.2 from attacking them jointly?

A. Yes he may, but only if attacker is conducting Offensive Options on both fronts.

14.23 {GG:44} May "attacker's units in one hex attack units in two or more adjacent hexes" if such defending units are on different fronts (even assuming Offensive Options on both) or is the attacker precluded by 20.2 from attacking them jointly?

A. Yes he may, but *only* if the attacker is conducting Offensive Options on both fronts.

14.23 {19:4:46} In an attack where the attacker is attacking two or more adjacent hexes, can all attached hexes be treated as breakthrough hexes as long as 15.3 is adhered to?

A. Yes.

14.23 {19:6:46} In an attack where the attacker is attacking two or more adjacent hexes, can all attached hexes be treated as breakthrough hexes as long as 15.3 is adhered to?

A. Yes; however this cannot be stretched to include an attack on an occupied hex and an undefended hex (14.4).

14.23 {GG:44} If two or more adjacent hexes are attacked, can all attacked hexes be treated as breakthrough hexes as long as 15.3 is adhered to?

A. Yes; however, this cannot be stretched to include an attack on an occupied hex and a vacant hex (14.4).

14.23 {4ER, 18:5:19} Could Gibraltar be attacked from two fronts at once, with both invasion fleets carrying the maximum two ground units for an amphibious assault making a total of four ground units available for the actual amphibious assault?

A. Gibraltar could be attacked simultaneously from two fronts, but the maximum number of actual ground units in the amphibious assault would still be two. Note that the two invasions would have to be combined into one simultaneous attack. One attack could not follow another on the same hex in the same turn except in the rare case of a Russian amphibious invasion as per 45.3.

14.23 {GG:44} Could Gibraltar be attacked from two fronts at once, with both invasion fleets carrying the maximum two ground units for an amphibious assault—making a total of four ground units available for the actual amphibious assault?

A. Invasion fleets could sail from both fronts but they must combine in the Gibraltar hex prior to invasion combat. The maximum number of ground units allowed to attack would still be two.

14.24 If, because of an Attrition Option retreat followed by a turn flip-flop, defender has more than two units stacked in an attacked hex, only two of those units may defend. (Defender determines which two.) The excess units are eliminated along with the defending ones on a "D" result and, unless attacker had the smaller force, eliminated by an "EX" result. Attacker would disregard the excess units in determining his own exchange losses. The excess units would share the fate of units forced to counterattack, but are not used to determine those counterattack odds. Normally only two ground units may attack from any one hex. There are three *EXCEPTIONS:* 1.) armor units on a breakthrough hex (see 14.37); 2.) up to three British units may attack from London; 3.) airborne units (see 31.5).

14.24 & 14.37 {4ER, 18:5:19, GG:44} Can a player attack from a breakthrough hex with more than two armored units?

A. Yes

14.25 When all preparations for attack and defense are complete, each attack is resolved as follows: the attacker totals the factors of his attacking force, including any factors from Ground Support air missions and naval Shore Bombardment. Defender totals his own factor strength, including DAS and any multiplicative value from terrain. The total attacker strength and defender strength are expressed as a ratio (fractions ignored), the die is rolled and the appropriate odds column on the CRT is consulted. Attacks stronger than 5-1 use the 5-1 column; attacks weaker than 1-4 automatically result in the elimination of the attacker.

EXAMPLES: 20 factors attacking 10 would be a 2-1 attack; 19 factors attacking 10 would be only a 1-1 attack; 5 factors attacking 13 would be a 1-3 attack.

14.25 {19:4:46, GG:44} May the attacker voluntarily choose to make an attack at odds of less than 1:4?

A. Yes.

14.26 Combat Results Table (CRT) outcomes:

A: All attacking units, including air but not naval, are eliminated and returned to the Force Pool on their scenario card.

D: All defending units including air are eliminated and returned to the Force Pool on their scenario card.

EX: Exchange. The side with fewer combat factors loses its entire force. The larger side removes at least an equal number of factors. Attacker must match the doubled, tripled or quadrupled value of defender's units, unless it is the defender who rolls the EX while counterattacking.

EXAMPLE: The defending force is a doubled 3-3 infantry with one factor of DAS. Attacker attacks (with seven or more factors) and rolls EX. Attacker must remove at least seven factors to match defender's loss. But if the defender rolls EX while counterattacking, the attacker need remove only four factors. If the attacker cannot exactly match the defender's factor loss, he must remove additional factors until he has lost at least as many factors as his opponent; he can also voluntarily choose to lose more factors than required.

CA: Counterattack. All of the defender's units must immediately attack all units which originally attacked them. Factors involved are checked, the die is rolled and the proper odds column consulted. All factors are basic when defender counterattacks; neither side's units are doubled, tripled or quadrupled, but if the defender rolls CA and the original attacker must attack again, defender's units resume their original value and attacker's die roll is at the original odds. Note, too, that when *defender* counterattacks, an A result eliminates the original defender while a D result eliminates the original attacker. If defender's counterattack would be at worse than 1-4 odds he is automatically eliminated without a die roll.

CA1: Defender must counterattack as above; he rolls on the 1-1 odds column regardless of factors involved.

CA2, CA3: Identical to CA1, using the 1-2 and 1-3 odds column respectively.

14.26 {GG:44} If the attacker rolls EX on a 1-2 attack, does the defender figure his losses at the doubled (tripled, quadrupled) rate? Example: a 2-3 attacking two doubled 1-3s.

A. Yes. The defender would have to remove only one 1-3 to match the attacker's loss.

14.27 No battle may end with a counterattack result. Each battle must ultimately end with an A, D or EX result.

14.28 Neither side may bring additional forces to bear during counterattacks, not even when such forces are adjacent to the attacked hex.

14.29 Whenever combat results in elimination of the original defender's ground units, the original attacker's surviving attacking ground units may advance into defender's vacated hex, up to the stacking limit, immediately after combat. *EXCEPTIONS:* units which were unsupplied at the start of their turn and airborne units which dropped during their turn may not so advance; exploiting units may not be able to advance, see 14.36. Attacker may place a bridgehead counter if allowed (*see rule 9, Bridgeheads*). Where two or more allies have ground forces participating in an attack, they must agree on which one of them will control the vacated hex, prior to occupying it; if unable to agree neither one may advance. The defender may never advance, not even when he wins a counterattack.

14.29 {4ER, 18:5:19} Can the original attacker advance his forces following a CA by the original defender which resulted in the original defender's elimination?

A. Yes—the ability to advance after combat is limited solely to the *original* attacker—regardless of who was actually *attacking* when the elimination occurred.

14.29 {GG:44} Can the original attacker advance his forces following a CA by the original defender which resulted in the original defender's elimination?

A. Yes. The original attacker may always advance after combat; the original defender never—regardless of who was actually attacking when elimination occurred.

14.3 DETAILS OF BREAKTHROUGH AND EXPLOITATION:

14.31 Whenever attacker's ground units include at least one armor unit, and *any* attacking ground unit survives and advances into the defender's hex, a *Breakthrough* results. Defender's hex becomes the "Breakthrough hex".

14.31 & 34.33 {25:3:58} The Anglo-French cooperation restrictions are in effect. French armor and British infantry attack a hex; the British infantry advances into the hex. May British armor now exploit from that hex?

A. Yes. An Anglo-French breakthrough may be utilized by the country whose unit advances into the hex, regardless of which country's armor is used to meet the armor requirement of 14.31.

14.32 Any or all armored units that made no attack during Combat, but that were adjacent to or stacked with any unit (including airborne) that did attack the Breakthrough hex, may now be placed on the Breakthrough hex. This placement is free; movement factors and stacking limits are ignored. Units so placed are "Exploiting units". The units that survived the original attack and occupied the Breakthrough hex is *not* an exploiting unit and may not move nor attack during Exploitation (even to participate in a defender generated CA).

14.33 After all normal ground combat has been resolved, movement may be made from each Breakthrough hex as follows: the first Exploiting unit may only move up to two hexes from the Breakthrough hex. Each subsequent Exploiting unit may either move up to two hexes from the Breakthrough hex, or duplicate exactly the move of a previous Exploiting unit and then move up to two additional hexes of its own. In no case may a unit exceed its movement factor, which is counted from the Breakthrough hex and is limited normally by the ZOC of any enemy armor in the vicinity.

14.33 {GG:44} May a single exploiting armor unit move up to the limit of its MF as long as it remains within two hexes of the breakthrough hex?

A. No. This type of question has been asked so frequently that we feel obliged to reiterate what the rule already states. The first exploiting unit may enter only two hexes other than the breakthrough hex. A second exploiting unit may (a) move two hexes from the breakthrough hex in a different route *or* (b) duplicate exactly the move of the first, then move two additional hexes. A third exploiting unit may do either (a) or (b), or may duplicate exactly the route of the second one, then move one or two additional hexes depending on its MF.

14.33 {GG:44} If, say, the first or second exploiting unit in a "chain" of three makes an exploitation attack and is eliminated (thus "breaking the chain"), is there any adverse effect on the more distant units?

A. No.

14.34 Exploiting units may not enter or attack neutral countries unless a DoW was already made. They may cross a front boundary, in which case their movement after crossing must conform to whatever Option attacker announced for the entered front: if entering a Pass Option front they could do so only over already friendly hexes controlled at the start of the turn and could not pass adjacent to any enemy unit. If entering an Attrition Option front they could conceivably add their factors to the Attrition total there. Whenever this situation could arise, it behooves the attacker to complete combat on the Offensive Option front before turning to the Attrition front. If Exploiting up to, but not across a front boundary, Exploiting units could attack across the boundary only if an Offensive Option had been announced on the other front; they could also Attrition across the boundary if Attrition had been announced for the other front. *See 20.2.*

14.35 *Only* Exploiting units, airborne units that dropped during Exploitation movement, and their air support may engage in Exploitation attacks. All Exploitation movement must be completed before these attacks are announced and resolved. No unit may ever *attack* (not CA) more than once during a player turn. After movement, the attacker may make any airborne drops and fly any Ground Support missions he desires, in conjunction with his Exploitation attacks, but the air support must not have flown previously during the game turn, and the airborne must not have been dropped previously in the turn, nor even moved, nor have engaged in combat. Defender may commit defensive air, attacker may intercept it, and ground Exploitation combat is then resolved on the CRT. Counterair and offensive naval missions may never be undertaken during Exploitation.

14.36 Exploiting units that survive their Exploitation attacks may advance to occupy the defender's hex, but *not* if such advance would break the required two-hex chain of Exploiting units. Note that such an advance does not constitute a new Breakthrough hex, and that the intervening hex between the last unit in the chain and the hex to which the attacker advances must be one through which the attacker advances as per 14.33.

14.36 {GG:44} Can you be more precise on exactly what constitutes "breaking the chain" when advancing after exploitation combat?

A. Two requirements must be met: 1) the hex advanced into must be adjacent to the previous unit in the chain *or* be separated from it by one hex already passed through by an exploiting unit; 2) the advance must not leave a more distant unit in the chain in violation of the first requirement.

14.37 Some or all Exploiting units could have remained on the Breakthrough hex, and *all* who so remained could have attacked therefrom, even if "overstacked". But if, after casualties, post-Combat advance, and SR phase, the breakthrough hex should still be overstacked, the attacker must eliminate excess units of his choice. Overstacking is permitted on the Breakthrough hex only—units that move off the Breakthrough hex may not be overstacked at the end of Exploitation movement.

14.37 see 9.5 & 14.37

14.37 see 14.24 & 14.37

14.38 Armor units must trace a normal supply line at the start of the player turn in which they exploit. In the game turn following Exploitation, and only in that game turn, they are automatically in supply and need not trace a supply line (*EXCEPTION: see 27.34 and 35.3*).

EXAMPLE: An armored unit exploits in the Spring turn. At the start of its Summer turn it is able to trace a normal supply line (in addition to being automatically in supply). It can exploit again in the Summer turn.

EXAMPLE: An armored unit exploits in the Spring turn. At the start of its Summer turn it is *not* able to trace a normal supply line. It is automatically in supply and can move normally, but it cannot exploit.

14.39 Units of a nation taking a Pass Option on the front of the Breakthrough hex can never exploit their ally's Breakthrough, even if they could do so by moving over controlled hexes without coming adjacent to enemy units.

14.4 Breakthrough and Exploitation may occur without a defender being eliminated from the Breakthrough hex anytime a player with a supplied armor unit which has not attacked during that player turn declares his intention to "attack" a vacant enemy controlled hex with that armor unit (and any other units adjacent to the attacked hex which have not yet attacked in that turn and wish to be included in the "attack"). The "attacking" armor unit is moved into the "attacked" enemy hex and thereby creates a Breakthrough hex from where other armor units may exploit as per 14.32. Units may "attack" a vacant hex in this manner so as to advance into it as a result of the non-contested "combat" only if an armor unit is involved in the "attack" and will occupy the "attacked" hex (*EXCEPTION: 29.436*). However, Exploitation from an *undefended* Breakthrough hex is *not* allowed if the Breakthrough hex is adjacent to an enemy ground unit, or if a supply line cannot be traced to it at the moment of combat.

14.4 {4ER, 18:5:19, GG:44} Can an armor unit attack and occupy a vacant hex even if there will be no subsequent exploitation out of that hex?

A. Yes—but if there is to be no exploitation from the Breakthrough hex the attacker may not overstack therein.

14.4 {19:4:46} May more than the one required attacking armor unit be moved into the non-contested hex to form the Breakthrough hex?

A. No.

14.4 {19:6:46} May more than the one required attacking armor unit be moved into the non-contested hex to form the Breakthrough hex?

A. Yes.

14.4 {GG:44} May more than the one required attacking armor unit be moved into the vacant breakthrough hex?

A. Yes.

14.4 {GG:44} May an exploiting unit attack a vacant hex so as to be able to advance a hex farther?

A. No.

14.4 {GG:44} Must the attacker designate a supply fleet to provide supply to an undefended beach hex when he plans to invade and then exploit from it during the Combat Phase?

A. Yes. Similarly, SR has to be over *supplied*, controlled hexes. So, if you drop a paratroop unit on Great Yarmouth, for example, you must have had a supply fleet predesignated in order to SR units thence.

14.4 {25:3:58} Exactly what is a vacant hex?

A. A hex without a defending ground unit; an airbase, air or naval unit in a hex does not disqualify it as a vacant hex.

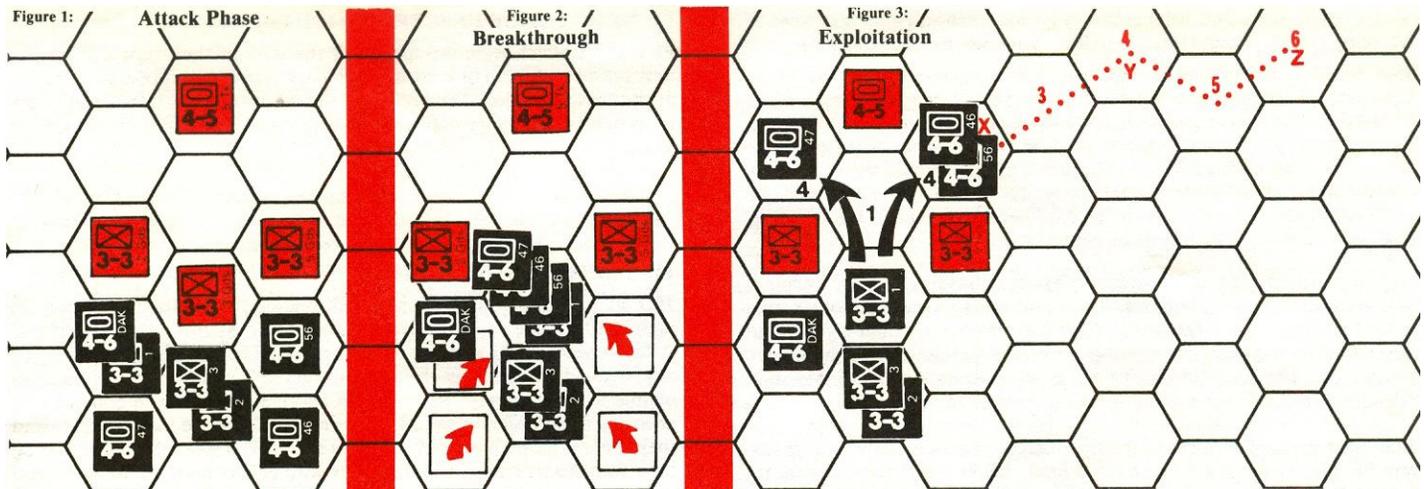
14.4 see 9.12 & 14.4

14.4 & 29.436 {19:4:46} Can units which have invaded an undefended beach, attack units adjacent to the beach in the same turn?

A. No.

14.4 & 29.436 {GG:44} Can units which have invaded an undefended beach, attack units adjacent to the beach in the same turn?

A. Units eligible for exploitation combat can; others cannot.



EXAMPLE:

Figure 1: The three black infantry units and the DAK armored unit are attacking the red 3rd Gds unit at 13-6 (2-1).

Figure 2: Black won the attack and eliminated the red 3rd Gds unit and has occupied the vacated hex with his victorious 1st Infantry. The three black armored units in adjacent hexes not participating in the attack have been moved onto the Breakthrough hex at no movement cost.

Figure 3: The three black armored units are exploiting but can't get very far due to the ZOC of the red 5 TK unit. The first hex moved into costs one movement point, but it brought the black armor units into the red ZOC, forcing them to expend three movement points per hex to leave it. Thus, the black armor can exploit only two hexes, even though they have two movement factors remaining. Note that if the red 5th TK unit had been a non-armor unit, that the three black armored units could have penetrated all the way to hex Z creating a chain of armored units at hexes X, Y, and Z. As it is, black may attempt to attack the 5th Tank unit now after Exploitation movement or remain where it is, having already isolated the red 2nd Gds unit. Even if successful in its attack vs the red armor unit, black may move no further this turn other than occupying the defeated unit's hex.

15. THE OFFENSIVE OPTION—UNIT CONSTRUCTION PHASE—

15.1 Prior to beginning construction, a player should review BRPs he has already spent during the current turn, and compare them with the turn limit on BRPs he may spend. He may now spend remaining BRPs, up to this limit, on construction of units from his scenario card Force Pool and/or on BRP grants to other nations.

15.2 Construction costs in BRPs per combat factor are shown on the table on the right side of the mapboard.

15.3 See the Naval and Air Warfare and Partisan sections for special rules governing the construction of these units.

15.4 Constructed units must be initially placed in their home country, on any supplied, controlled hex not in enemy ZOC. Units may not be constructed on a hex which their country did not control *at the beginning* of the current game turn. Where not yet at war, units may be placed at a

border despite the ZOC of a future enemy's armor unit there. American units go in the U.S. box on the upper left of the mapboard. East Prussia is an integral part of Germany for this rule as is Ulster part of Britain, and Sicily part of Italy. But France may not place units in Corsica, nor Italy in Sardinia etc. Neither may Russia place units in East Europe after its occupation.

15.4 {GG:44} Britain wishes to construct a unit in Ulster. Must a supply fleet have been designated to meet the "supplied, controlled hex" requirement?
A. Yes. This applies even for construction of naval and air units in Ulster. However—since it is the hex that must be supplied and not the units—one naval factor will suffice to supply all of Ulster for construction purposes. Note that this ruling applies to a multitude of parallel situations (e.g., Russia, with a fleet in Batum, building in a controlled but otherwise isolated hex suppliable through Odessa).

15.4 see **5.55 & 15.4 & 27.13**

15.4 & 32.6 {4ER, 18:5:19} Can the Russian construct non-Partisan units in a Partisan-controlled hex?

A. Yes—but remember that 15.4 requires the hex to be *supplied* as well as controlled, and that partisans do not control a hex after they leave it.

15.4 & 32.6 {GG:44} Can Russia construct non-partisan units in a partisan-controlled hex?

A. Not unless the hex was controlled by Russia when the partisan entered it and meets the other 15.4 criteria.

15.5 BRP grants to other nations are designated at this time and transferred to the recipient during SR. The following restrictions apply to BRP grants:

15.51 One nation may not grant more than 40 BRPs to another nation in one turn.

15.52 The western Allies together may not grant more than 40 BRPs to Russia in one turn.

15.53 No nation may spend more than half of its total yearly BRP allotment (after SW construction) on BRP grants to all other nations, during that year. BRPs count against this limit once granted, even if some are subsequently lost on the Murmansk run.

15.54 Once a nation grants BRPs to another nation, the recipient may not in the future grant BRPs to the granting nation for the remainder of the game.

15.55 Russia may not grant BRPs to major powers. Russia may not receive BRPs from the West until at war with Germany, and then only via Murmansk or Lend Lease routes (*EXCEPTION: 40.5*).

15.56 Neither France nor the U.S. may grant BRPs until Spring 1942.

15.57 Note that BRPs are deducted from the granting nation in the Construction phase but are not added to the total of the recipient until the SR phase. The recipient is unable to spend any of these BRPs on his own Construction phase until the following game turn.

15.5 {GG:44} May BRP grants be made to a major power against that power's will (for instance to attempt to induce an unwanted turn "flip-flop")?
A. No.

15.6 FREE SIBERIAN TRANSFER: This is the only exception to the Unit Construction process. In the Winter 1941 turn the Russian player may designate any four ground units currently in his Force Pool for placement on the board during the Construction Phase without any BRP construction costs. In the Spring 1942 turn he may so designate an additional three units without cost, plus two more units in Summer 1942, and one in Fall 1942. Note that much of Russia's Force Pool may not be constructed until 1942—these units may not be designated in Winter 1941.

15.61 Only ground units are eligible for free placement in this manner. Airborne units may never be selected for free placement. The number of armor units selected for free placement can never exceed the number of infantry units taken for free placement in each turn. Free placement options cannot be accumulated from one turn to the next. They must be used during their scheduled turn or they are lost.

15.62 Units selected for Free Siberian Transfer must be placed initially in a friendly Russian city which can trace a line of supply to the east edge of the board. Normal stacking limits must be adhered to during such placement.

15.62 {19:1:46, GG:44} Can the city receiving Free Siberian Transfer be in Axis ZOC?

A. Yes. "Friendly" hexes are defined by "control" (7.12).

15.63 Use of the Free Siberian Transfer is not automatic; it is an option open to the Russian player. Such a withdrawal of forces from the Soviet Far Eastern defenses will have consequences of global proportions due to its effect on the grand strategy of Japan. If Russia opts to use the Free Siberian Transfer the Victory Conditions for certain game scenarios change as a result.

15.631 TWO PLAYER CAMPAIGN GAME: Shorten the Axis conquest dates by one game turn for each level of victory.

15.632 MULTI-PLAYER CAMPAIGN GAME: Increase USSR objective requirements by two objectives for each level of victory.

15.633 TWO PLAYER 1939 & 1942 SCENARIOS: Increase Allied objective requirements by one objective for each level of victory.

15.634 MULTI-PLAYER 1939 & 1942 SCENARIOS: Increase Russian objective requirements by one objective for each level of victory.

16. THE OFFENSIVE OPTION—STRATEGIC REDEPLOYMENT (SR) PHASE—

16.1 Each nation whose player turn it is may now redeploy a number of its supplied units, moving them any distance, subject to the following limits on number of units moved: U.S. 10, Germany 9, Britain 7, Russia 6, Italy 5, France 5. *Strategic Redeployment (hereafter referred to as SR)* is not transferable from one nation to another and may not be accumulated from one turn to the next. Units redeployed by SR are not subject to interception in any manner.

16.1 {4ER, 18:5:19} When a player sea escorts an ally's unit in the SR Phase, which unit is charged with the actual SR?

A. The unit being SRed—not the transporting unit.

16.1 {GG:44} When a player sea escorts an ally's unit in the SR Phase, which unit is charged with the actual SR?

A. The unit be SRed—not the escorting unit.

16.1 {19:4:46, GG:44} Can the German player use Italian SR capacity to move lent Italian forces which remain under German control?

A. No.

16.1 & 36.22 {25:3:58} Can Italian units be lent, then SRed in the same turn?

A. Yes—either Germany or Italy uses one SR for the loan; Germany then uses an additional SR for actual redeployment. (The same applies for units returned to Italian control.)

16.2 Units SRed by land may move only over controlled, supplied hexes (including hexes controlled by an ally). Any SRed unit (ground, air, or naval) may not be adjacent to nor pass adjacent to any enemy unit including air, naval, air base counter, and partisan at the start, end, or at any point of its SR *Exc: 29.66*. Note however that a unit is not "adjacent to an enemy unit" if the enemy is a future enemy, not yet at war. (*See also 5.34*).

16.2 {19:4:46} Insert "Exc: 29.66" at end of second sentence, although 16.2 only refers to units SRing over land.

16.3 Ground units and BRP grants may not cross any all-water hexside (crossing arrows excepted) during SR without *Sea Escort (See 29.6)*

16.3 {19:4:46} Can airborne units "fly" across all-water hexsides during SR?
A. No—they are "Ground" units.

16.3 {GG:44} Can airborne units "fly" across all-water hexsides during SR?
A. No—they are "ground" units.

16.4 Naval units moving by SR may not cross more than one front boundary. (*Exception:* Fleets performing Sea Escort may not cross a front boundary.) They may pass through the strait of Gibraltar only if Gibraltar is controlled by their side. Hostile forces in any other hex adjacent to the strait (including AA9 & BB8) do not prevent SR through Gibraltar, so long as Gibraltar itself is controlled. Similarly, naval SR may not pass through the Turkish straits if any one of the four hexes adjacent to the Crossing Arrows is controlled by hostile or neutral forces.

16.5 Air units may SR over water only by use of Sea Escort *or* by tracing a path of no more than eight hexes from a controlled air base to another controlled air base on the far shore. They may cross more than eight water hexes total in this manner by using a chain of bases no more than eight hexes apart. They may SR over partial land-sea hexes if the land

therein is friendly or neutral, but not if it is enemy-controlled.

16.5 & 34.4 {GG:44} May British air units SR over water by using French-controlled cities/airbases?

A. Yes, and they may do so even if a French unit is present.

16.6 Each grant of 20 BRPs or fraction thereof to another nation counts as one SR against the granting nation's limit. BRPs travel from capital to capital and thus may not be SRed if the capital of either country is adjacent to an enemy unit. *EXCEPTION:* Russia may receive BRPs as long as she has not surrendered nor been conquered without regard to the status of Moscow. *See 40 & 42.*

16.7 Special rules apply to units in the U.S. box:

16.71 SRs from America to Britain ("Initial Deployment") are normally limited to 6 per turn, but may be raised to 7 or lowered to 5 by certain variant counters. Each 20 BRP grant (or fraction thereof) to an ally counts against this Initial Deployment limit, whether via Murmansk, Lend Lease (as applicable to the first turn of the two-turn Lend Lease process), or across the Atlantic; and whether granted to Britain or another ally. Once a U.S. fleet has been deployed to Europe and for any reason returns to the U.S. box, it is *not* counted as an initially deploying unit if it again SRs to Europe.

16.71 {4ER, 18:5:19, GG:44} Are eliminated and rebuilt US units forced to redeploy to Britain again under the limitations of Initial Deployment or can they be built in England?

A. The former.

16.72 All Initially Deploying units must end their SR as follows:

—if France has been conquered and Britain not: in Britain (including Ulster).

—if Britain has been conquered and France not: in France through a western front port.

—if neither Britain nor France has been conquered: in either one through a western front port.

—if both Britain and France have been conquered; in any hex reachable through a friendly port in or bordering on the Western Front.

—if no such friendly port exists, Initial Deployment may be made only by invading any invadable hex in or bordering on the Western Front (*see also 29.171 & 29.438*).

Initial Deployment may be by Sea Transport in rare cases (*See 29.171*).

16.73 Units may not move farther than the areas specified by 16.72 in the same turn, not even at the cost of an additional SR.

EXAMPLE: Only France has been conquered; the U.S. and Britain have invaded occupied France. A U.S. unit deploys to Britain. It may not SR from Britain to France until the following turn.

16.74 Air and naval units may perform defensive missions in the game turn that they arrive in Britain if they were constructed in an earlier turn or were "At Start" units.

16.75 No Sea Escort is required for units which SR from America to Britain, but it is required for BRP grants to any *other* ally. All such Sea Escort must be U.S. based.

16.75 {23:4:46} Britain falls; France has not. Do U.S. units initially deploying into France require sea escort?

A. No. Britain should be taken as "Europe" in this rule—and in 16.74 and the first 16.71 also.

16.75 & 29.61 {19:4:46, GG:44} These rules seem contradictory. Does the US require Sea Escort to give BRPs to Britain?

A. No. Insert "other" between "any" and "ally" in 16.75.

16.75 & 29.61 {19:6:46} These rules seem contradictory. Does the US require Sea Escort to give BRPs to Britain?

A. No. Insert "other" between "any" and "ally" in 16.75. Note; in the rare game in which France is unconquered when the US enters, rule 16.71 would apply to SRs to Britain and France combined. Rules 16.74 and 16.75 would apply equally to France. French fleets could be additional Murmansk escort fleets (16.8).

16.75 & 29.61 {19:4:46} If Britain is conquered, must units which SR from America have Sea Escort?

A. Yes.

16.75 & 29.61 {GG:44} If Britain is conquered, must units which SR from America have Sea Escort?

A. Yes. Note, in the rare game in which France is unconquered when the US enters, rule 16.71 would apply to SRs to Britain and France combined. Rules 16.74 and 16.75 would apply equally to France. French fleets could be additional Murmansk escort fleets (16.8).

16.76 If Britain is conquered, American Initial Deployments are limited to 4 per turn (and may be raised to 5 or lowered to 3 by the variant counters). Should the Allies recapture London, Initial Deployments would return to 6 (7 or 5).

16.77 In invasion Initial Deployment, only the units aboard the invasion fleet would count against the Deployment limit. The fleets themselves would not, since they do not deploy but rather perform a mission from their U.S. bases and then return there.

16.7 {19:1:46} May fleets in the US box which have not initially deployed perform any naval duties?

A. *See 29.17.* The restrictions there apply whether the fleets have initially deployed or not.

16.7 {19:4:46} Can US fleets which have not initially deployed perform any game function even if both British and France have fallen?

A. *See 29.17.* The restrictions apply to fleets in the U.S. box whether they have or have not deployed already, and whether or not Britain/France have fallen.

16.7 {GG:44} May fleets in the US box which have not initially deployed perform any naval duties, even if Britain and France have fallen?

A. *See 29.17.* The restrictions there apply whether the fleets have initially deployed or not, and regardless of whether the Western Allies have fallen.

16.8 Either the U.S. or Britain may designate additional fleets to protect Sea Escorted BRPs in the Murmansk box by moving them to the Murmansk box. Each naval counter so designated counts as one SR; it may be based anywhere in the Atlantic including the U.S. Allied ASW counters may also move from the SW box to the Murmansk box during the Allied SR phase; but they may return therefrom only during a Spring turn SR phase. No SRs are charged for such ASW movement. *See rule 42 for details.*

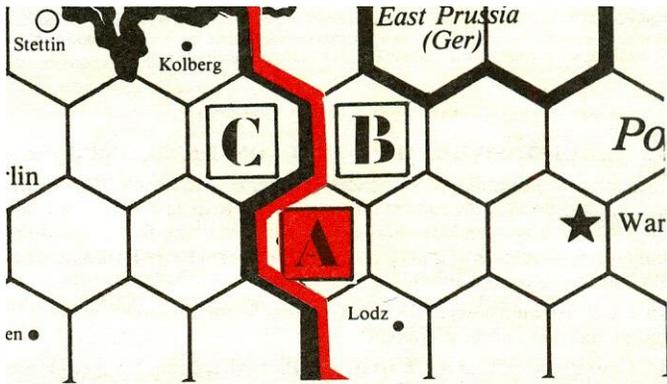
16.9 Partisans may not SR. Minor country forces may, if they are allied with a major power; such SRs being charged against that major power.

17. REMOVAL OF UNSUPPLIED UNITS—

17.1 Units which were unsupplied at the start of their turn and remain unsupplied at the end of it are now removed from the mapboard regardless of the Option employed and returned to their force pool. (Unlike units lost from other causes, they may not be reconstructed in the same turn they are lost.)

18. THE ATTRITION OPTION—

18.1 Movement, Construction and SR phases of the Attrition Option are identical to those of Offensive Options. Only Attrition combat differs. After movement, the attacker totals the ground factors he has in contact (if any) with adjacent enemy ground units on the front. He may include units unable to trace supply. His units on another front, but in contact with enemy ground units on the Attritioned front, may be included provided they are not participating in Attrition or in Offensive Option combat on their own front. Units in contact only with enemy units on another front are not counted, nor are units in contact only across all-water hexsides (unless a hexside crossing arrow is present). The attacker must count all eligible units in his total—he may purposely omit an eligible unit only if that unit is participating in an Offensive option attack on an adjacent front.



EXAMPLE: If red turn, unit A could participate in Attrition combat on either front, but not both.

18.2 Units of all allies participating in the Attrition are totalled together for one Attrition die roll.

EXAMPLE: Italy could not be subjected to one Attrition die roll in the Mediterranean from British forces and a second from French forces. However, Italy could be subjected to one die roll from combined Franco-British forces and another from an invaded but unconquered Greece if Allied Intervention and alliance had not yet occurred in Greece. If two non-allied minors are involved, they could each take a die roll; thus, to continue the example, Italy could be subjected to yet a third die roll from Yugoslavia should Italy have attacked both Greece and Yugoslavia but conquered neither.

18.2 {GG:44} Can there ever be more than one Attrition die roll on the same front in one player turn?

A. No. The 18.2 example contains what may be mistaken for an exception, but it is not, because the attacked minor gets a "mini-turn" of its own before the next major power player turn. The example is not reversible: the Axis could not take separate attrition rolls against Britain/France, Yugoslavia and/or Greece—even if interventions had not occurred.

18.3 Attacker finds the appropriate column on the Attrition Resolution Table on the mapboard and rolls the die. The result may indicate a number of unit counters (C) which the defender must lose and a number of hexes (H) which he must give up to the attacker.

18.31 Defender first chooses which unit counters he will lose and returns them to his scenario card Force Pool. He may not choose to lose more than the number called for. They must be ground units which belong to any defending country which has ground units in contact with the enemy, and may be located anywhere on the Attritioned front. Partisans may be taken as Attrition losses. Units of a defending major power's active minor allies or of a minor in which the defending major power has intervened may be taken to satisfy the major's losses and vice versa. Russian units which are required by their scenario card to remain in place until Axis approach may not be taken as Attrition losses until they have been released by such approach. If defending allies cannot agree on which units to lose, they split the losses with the odd unit (if any) coming from the nation with the larger number of ground factors in contact with the enemy on the front. Similarly, if attacking allies cannot agree on which hexes are to be gained, they split the rewards with the one having the most factors in contact for the Attrition getting first choice. Ties are resolved by a die roll. Units still in the U.S. box may not be taken as Western Front Attrition losses.

18.31 {19:4:46} Could the Axis take two Attrition attacks in the Mediterranean; one vs an unconquered minor and another vs a major which has not been intervened?

A. No.

18.31 {19:4:46} In order for units "of a defending major power's active minor ally or of a minor in which the defending major power has intervened" to be taken as attrition losses to satisfy the major's losses and vice versa, isn't it necessary that at least one ground unit of the country taking such losses be in contact with an enemy ground unit on the attritioned front?

A. No.

18.31 {19:6:46, GG:44} In order for units "of a defending major power's active minor ally or of a minor in which the defending major power has intervened" to be taken as attrition losses to satisfy the major's losses and vice versa, isn't it necessary that at least one ground unit of the country taking such losses be in contact with an enemy ground unit on the attritioned front?

A. Yes.

{19:4:46} 18.31 What happens if the defender does not have enough ground units on the attritioned front to satisfy attrition losses?

A. The excess dictated losses are ignored.

18.31 {GG:44} What happens if the defender does not have enough ground units on the attritioned front to satisfy attrition losses?

A. He loses what he has there; the excess losses are ignored.

18.32 The attacker may now select a hex (if entitled by the die roll) for occupation. He may not select a fortress, capital, objective or bridgehead hex, nor one which can only be occupied through a hexside containing a crossing arrow. He may select Luxembourg unless a Bridgehead counter is in that hex. The selected hex must contain an enemy ground unit and must be adjacent to one of the attacker's ground units, eligible to advance. (Replacements and units unsupplied at the start of their turn are not eligible to advance.)

18.33 Defender retreats his unit(s) one hex off the selected hex. Attacker must advance at least one adjacent ground unit into the selected hex. If unable or unwilling to do so, he may not require defender to vacate it. Defender may overstack; if forced to do so he may retreat into enemy ZOC, or into a vacant enemy-controlled hex. He may not retreat into a hex which attacker will vacate to make his advance, nor into a hex occupied by any enemy ground, air, naval or air base counter.

18.33 {4ER, 18:5:19} When retreating after Attrition combat, may the defender retreat to an enemy controlled hex or into a hex creating an overstack if there are other alternate retreat routes available?

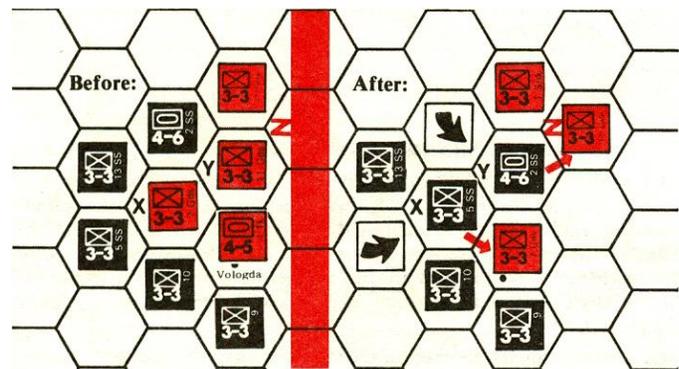
A. NO. Add the words "if forced to do so" after "overstack" in the fourth sentence so as to agree with 6.13.

18.33 {GG:44} When retreating after Attrition combat, may the defender retreat to an enemy-controlled hex or into a hex creating an overstack if there are other alternate retreat routes available?

A. No. Add the words "if forced to do so" after "overstack" in the fourth sentence so as to agree with 6.13.

18.34 Once the attacker has designated all the hexes which he wishes to occupy and is entitled to by the Attrition Combat die roll, the defender vacates all such hexes simultaneously followed by the attacker's simultaneous occupation of those hexes. The vacate/occupy process is not done one hex at a time; all hexes must be vacated before the attacker advances to occupy the first vacated hex, but the defender cannot retreat into a hex which the attacker will select to occupy in his advance. The attacker is not required to select all, or any, hexes for occupation when he rolls "H". He may elect to remain in his positions.

18.35 If defender overstacks when retreating, he has until the end of his own next Movement Phase to meet stacking limits. If he does not, he must destroy the excess units of his choice. If defending units have no retreat (totally surrounded by enemy units or impassable hexsides) they are destroyed when required to vacate.



EXAMPLE: Black has taken an Attrition Option on the Eastern Front with 25 ground factors in contact with Red ground forces and has rolled a "1". Red must eliminate three corps and give up two hexes. Red eliminates two 1-3's from another part of the front but does not wish to give up Vologda so he eliminates his 1st Tank unit, leaving Vologda vacant and denying Black the chance to occupy it. Seeing this, Black decides to occupy hexes X and Y instead. Red's 7th Guards is forced back into Vologda; its only other retreat into hex Y being blocked by black's advance into hex Y. Red's 11th Guards retreats into hex Z.

18.36 Naval or air units which must withdraw due to Attrition may redeploy to the nearest friendly base. If no other friendly naval bases exist on that front, the naval units are eliminated. Air units would be eliminated only if no other friendly air bases exist within eight hexes regardless of front boundaries. In no case may basing capacities (28.1 & 29.11) be exceeded.

19. THE PASS OPTION—

19.1 The Pass Option contains no Combat phase. Construction and SR phases are identical to the other options. The Movement Phase has major differences from that of the Offensive or Attrition Options.

19.2 Ground units may move only over already controlled hexes, even if the hex in question is already vacant and lies within the moving player's ZOC. If *adjacent* to any enemy unit (*see* 5.34), even if the enemy unit is on another front, they may not move. Their move may not begin in, end in, nor pass through any hex adjacent to any enemy unit (ground, air or naval) including partisans and airbase counters. Units of a power taking a Pass Option may enter hexes captured by an ally during the same Movement phase, provided no other restrictions apply.

19.3 Air units may stage only over already controlled or all-water hexes.

19.4 Naval units may change base only if the enemy has no fleets on the front and has no air units within four hexes of the course taken. This is true even if the enemy fleets/air units are ineligible to intercept.

19.5 A ground or air unit which changes front during movement, or which attacks an enemy unit across a front boundary is not bound by these restrictions if it enters or attacks a non-Pass Option front. The front entered/attacked governs. Similarly, a naval unit may (during the Combat phase) move through a Pass Option front to bombard or invade another front, or to land a Sea Transport mission in a debarkation port on another front. (However, the Sea Transport mission could not land a unit in a Pass Option front port, even if the unit proceeded to move farther by land and enter or attack a hex of another front. The port of debarkation is the hex that "receives the action" of this naval mission.)

20. OPTION DETERMINANTS—

20.1 The hex that "receives the action" in all cases determines what Option is required.

EXAMPLE: Naval units in the Mediterranean could invade southern France, or land a Sea Transport mission at Marseilles, even though their nation was taking a Pass or Attrition Option in the Mediterranean. Air units in north Italy could similarly attack southern France. All these actions would of course require an Offensive Option on the Western Front.

EXAMPLE: Naval units in the Mediterranean could *not* land a Sea Transport mission at Genoa in the example above, even if the transported units proceeded to move by land and attack a Western Front hex.

EXAMPLE: Ground units in Turin and U21 could attack adjacent units in France during a Western Front Offensive Option even if an Attrition or Pass Option was used in the Mediterranean. Similarly the Turin units could be counted as part of a Western Front Attrition, even if an Offensive or Pass Option was used in the Mediterranean. In both of the foregoing, the units in Italy could ignore the restrictions on Pass Option movement in moving to the border.

20.2 In no case could any unit participate in action on two fronts. A unit at the front boundary could *not* take part in Offensive attacks on both fronts, nor in Attrition on both fronts, nor in Attrition on one front and an offensive attack on the other (*see* 14.34). It could, however, exploit from one front into an Offensive or Attrition attack situation on another front.

20.3 Combat is not a requirement to take an Attrition Option. The nation may want only to transit uncontrolled territory—thereby controlling it.

20.4 The Pass Option must be selected for a given front when:

A. An allied nation wishes to conduct an Offensive Option on that front and other powers are unwilling or unable to do so themselves. Allied nations can take either an Offensive or Attrition Option on each front. They cannot exercise both even if the Attrition Option is contemplated without Attrition combat. Dissenting nations must take the Pass Option.

B. If a nation finds itself unable to comply with the requirements of an already announced Option, it must take a Pass Option instead with a loss of any BRPs it may have previously paid for an Offensive Option.

21. DECLARATIONS OF WAR (DOW)—

21.1 *Declarations of War (hereafter referred to as Do W)* may be made only at the beginning of a player's turn. They cost 35 BRPs against a major power, 10 against a minor country. No player may attack forces of another country unless he is at war with it, nor may he violate its territory (or fly over it), including its colonies and conquests unless, of course, it is

his ally and he has permission to do so (*EXCEPTION:* partial land-sea neutral hexes; *see* 16.5, 28.23). No nation may declare war on Switzerland.

21.2 One DoW places the declaring nation at war with all allies of the nation it declares against, including their colonies, and allied with all nations that are on the opposing side. No additional BRP costs are incurred save the one DoW cost, no matter how many nations are involved. A nation, having war declared against it, does not itself pay out BRPs to reciprocate the declaration.

21.3 If a minor country survives its first turn at war, and if on the attacker's subsequent player turn a second, already allied, major power joins in attacking that minor, the second attacker is not required to pay DoW costs. It is not allowed to make such an attack without the approval of the original attacking power. Similarly, two already allied powers may both attack the same minor in the same turn, only one paying DoW costs. The other could not join the attack without approval of the paying power. If, because of allied disagreement, rule 51.5 is invoked, each power pays full DoW costs.

21.3 {19:4:46, GG:44} In Fall 1939 a neutral Italy declares war on Yugoslavia which survives the turn. In Winter 1939 Italy declares war on France. May Germany attack Yugoslavia in Winter 1939 without paying for a DoW?

A. Yes.

21.4 A major power that declares war on a minor must on the turn of declaration, either move forces into that minor *during the Movement or Combat Phase* or conduct an Offensive or Attrition Option attack against that minor's forces. If a nation finds itself unable to comply with this rule, its DoW is revoked and the BRPs lost. The minor is at peace with all powers and may not be attacked in the future without a new 10 BRP DoW expenditure.

21.41 {25:3:58} A major power declaring war against another major power must either move forces into territory controlled by that major power or conduct an Offensive or Attrition option attack against that major power's forces. Failure to do so results in a revocation of the DoW (21.4) [*EXCEPTION:* the United States' DoW against the Axis powers].

21.4 {19:1:46} Erratum: Add "during the Movement or Combat Phase" between "minor" and "or" in the first sentence.

21.4 {4ER, 18:5:19} Can Germany and Italy while still unallied both declare war on the same minor, but with only one of them actually attacking after the minor has set up his defense against the other?

A. No—if a country declares war it *must* attempt an invasion.

21.4 {GG:45} Can Germany and Italy, while still unallied, both declare war on the same minor, but with only one of them actually attacking after the minor has set up his defense against the other?

A. No—if a country declares war it *must* meet the 21.4 requirements or see its DoW revoked. Moreover, both DoWs would have to be made before the minor set up its defense—see the sequence of play.

21.4 {19:1:46} Must a nation declaring war take an Attrition or Offensive Option against the nation being attacked, or can it make use of the last sentence of 19.2 to take a Pass Option?

A. Yes; No.

21.4 {GG:45} Must a nation declaring war take an Attrition or Offensive Option against the nation being attacked, or can it make use of the last sentence of 19.2 to take a Pass Option?

A. The former.

21.4 {GG:45} At what point in the Sequence of Play is a Do W revoked?

A. At the end of the declarer's Combat Phase. The minor country's units are removed from the mapboard then.

21.4 {18:5:19} Would this revocation of a DoW also apply to a Major Power? For example, could France make a DoW on Italy and then take a Pass option while Britain takes an offensive against Rome?

A. Yes; France could not declare war without moving into Italy or at least making an attack on Italian forces or moving into an Italian-controlled hex or colony.

21.4 {GG:45} Would this revocation of a DoW also apply to a Major Power? For example, could France declare war on Italy and then take a Pass option while Britain makes an offensive against Rome?

A. It applies. France could not declare war without attacking Italian forces or occupying an Italian-controlled hex.

21.4 {19:1:46} Does the revocation of DoW apply even if the interception of a seaborne invasion or sea transport mission by another enemy prevents the attacker from launching his attack against the new enemy?

A. No.

21.4 {GG:45} Does the revocation of DoW apply even if the interception of a seaborne invasion or sea transport mission by another country prevents the attacker from launching his attack against the new enemy?

A. No, provided that the attacker can show that his mission would have met the requirements of 21.4 had it not been intercepted.

21.4 {GG:45} Can the 21.4 requirements be satisfied by using minor allied units? Lent Italians? Units of a minor in which the attacking major power has intervened?

A. Yes to all. Note that units in the last category cannot leave their home country; however, they can attack across the border.

21.4 {25:3:58} Does the application of this rule prevent a DoW by the United States?

A. No—the following should be added:

21.41 A major power declaring war against another major power must either move forces into territory controlled by that major power or conduct an Offensive or Attrition option attack against that major power's forces. Failure to do so results in a revocation of the DoW (21.4) [EXCEPTION: the United States' DoW against the Axis powers].

21.4 & 25.21 {4ER, 18:5:19} Don't these rules contradict one another?

A. No; 25.21 covers the rare case of an attack at the border which does not cross onto the "minor's soil" or is repulsed sufficiently to leave no attacking unit in the minor country.

21.4 & 25.21 {GG:45} Don't these rules contradict one another?

A. No; 25.21 covers the rare case of an attack at the border which fails, leaving no attacking unit on a hex of the minor country at the end of the attacker's turn.

21.4 & 36.1 {GG:45} Suppose Italy has declared war on France but the DoW is revoked. German units end the Combat Phase in Italy. What happens?

A. The German units must leave by SR or be eliminated at the end of the player turn.

21.4 & 36.23 {19:4:46} Can Italy declare war using lent Italian forces flying a mission over that country to satisfy the requirement for moving forces into that country on the same turn?

A. Yes.

21.4 & 36.23 {GG:45} Can Italy declare war and then Germany use a lent Italian unit to meet the requirement of 21.4 for Italy?

A. Yes.

21.5 EXCEPTIONS:

21.51 Any nation that declares war on a colony or minor country must, if such action will automatically result in war with a major power, pay 35 BRPs instead of 10 for such declaration.

21.52 Germany and Italy may not attack the same minor country, until Italy is at war with the Western Allies.

21.53 Russia and the western Allies may not declare war on the same minor country until Russia is at war with Germany or Italy.

21.54 Russia may not declare war on Germany or Italy or take any action that would automatically result in war with Germany until the Fall 1941 turn. (EXCEPTION: 43.2-3.). Until Russia is at war with Germany or Italy, she may declare war only on bordering minor countries. She may not declare war on Axis Minor Allies (active or not) if the minor is garrisoned by at least one German ground factor. If Russia has conquered a minor country, she may on a subsequent turn declare war on other minor countries which border the conquered minor. (Should Germany neglect to garrison Finland, and Russia conquer it; Russia would, off the north edge of the mapboard, border Sweden and Norway; and could declare war on those countries in anticipation of making a seaborne invasion. Off-board land movement and combat is not allowed.) Russia may not attack a Vichy colony until she is at war with Germany or Italy, and then would have to declare war on Vichy France to do so, unless Vichy had been activated or deactivated.

21.54 {GG:45} Neutral Italy declares war on Russia. Are the Western Allies allowed to declare war on Italy, since this would place Russia at war with Germany in violation of 21.54?

A. Yes. The prohibitions of 21.54 apply to Russian actions. The Western Allies are perfectly free to declare war on Italy and such action does cause Russia and Germany to be at war

21.6 The Campaign Game/1939 scenario begins with Germany already at war with Britain, France and Poland. No DoW BRPs are subtracted.

21.7 The 1942 scenario begins with the U.S. at war and as a result no BRPs are subtracted. However, in the Campaign Game/1939 scenario the U.S. must pay 35 BRPs to declare war on Germany at the beginning of the Spring 1942 turn.

21.8 A DoW cannot be made that would result in war between the eventual Axis partners (Germany & Italy), or between the eventual Allied nations (France, Britain, Russia, and the United States).

21. {GG:44} May DoW costs ever be shared by two countries?

A. Never.

22. MINOR COUNTRY OPERATIONS—

22.1 When war is declared on a minor country, the *nearest* major power opponent or potential opponent of the attacker (*as determined by distance in hexes from minor capital to major capital*) sets up the minor country's forces in their home country. Should the minor country survive the initial player turn of invasion, control of the minor's forces would pass to whatever major power first intervenes. (Germany always controls her Minor Allies in the event they are attacked. Polish forces are set up and controlled by the British player.) Setup is done before front Options are announced. At least one ground unit must be initially placed in the minor country capital; it need not remain there. Attacker's opponent continues to move and control the minor country's forces as long as they survive, and selects the Options they employ.

22.1 {GG:45} Hungary is inactive, two German ground units and a 5-4 air are in Budapest. The Western Allies declare war on Hungary. One minor ground unit must be placed in Budapest; the Hungarian air now has no base. What happens?

A. Any minor unit which cannot be legally placed is eliminated, unless the DoW is revoked.

22.2 The Minor Country Forces Chart on the mapboard shows the forces available to each minor. The minor neutral counters provided with the game do not allow placement of all minor neutral forces simultaneously, since it's extremely unlikely they would all be in play on a given turn. If Yugoslav forces are required in Fall 1939 there may be a shortage of 2-3 infantry counters; Spanish or Turkish counters can be substituted here. Some countries, e.g. Portugal, have no armed forces; therefore an invader will be unopposed but he must still pay DoW costs.

22.3 On the DoW player turn, previously *hostile* major powers may oppose attacks on a minor only by naval interception (when possible). Such interception does not constitute intervention. No major power air units may interfere with attacks on the minor on this turn.

22.4 At the start of the Campaign Game/1939 scenario Poland is allied with Britain and France. Should Poland survive into 1940, France and Britain may split Polish BRPs in any agreed manner at YSS (*see* 24.7).

22.5 Minor country units, when lost, are lost permanently; they may not be reconstructed. *EXCEPTION*: Active Minor Allies.

22.6 If isolated from their own capital, minor country units may be supplied by any country presently at war with the invader without constituting Intervention.

22.7 Minor country ground units may not leave their home country (even if allied [*see* 23.1] with a major power); air and naval units may not base outside their home country. (Spain may have units in the Balearic Islands and Spanish Morocco.) Again, Active Minor Allies are excepted. Ground units may attack adjacent units across their border, but may not advance into the cross-border hex after combat. Air and naval units may operate freely from their in-country bases, the one restriction being that on the player turn of invasion they may operate only against those forces of the invading power which are attacking their home country.

EXAMPLE: A Sea Transport fleet which will land ground units at a nearby port to attack a minor country could be intercepted by the minor country's air/naval units. The same major power's fleets, operating only against an enemy major power or a different minor country, could not be so intercepted by the minor on the player turn of invasion.

22.7 {19:4:46, GG:45} May minors leave units based outside of their home country on a possession (such as Swedish units in Gotland)?

A. Yes; possessions should be considered part of their "home country".

22.8 Minor country units may be supplied from their own capital or from

any supply source controlled by a major power already at war with their attacker, even if intervention has not yet occurred. Such major power may supply the minor's forces by sea (27.23).

23. INTERVENTION IN MINOR COUNTRIES—

23.1 If a minor country is not conquered on the turn of DoW, any opponent of the attacker may intervene by sending ground, naval or air units to the minor country during his own Movement, Combat or SR phase. Conducting a naval or air mission in a hex of the minor country is, by itself, insufficient to constitute Intervention. These intervening units may stack with the minor country's units. The intervening power, if not already at war with the attacker, must declare war at the start of its turn in order to so intervene. Such Intervention results in the minor country becoming allied with the intervening power(s) and, if the attacker does not capture the minor capital, will deliver its BRPs to the intervening power(s) in the next YSS.

23.1 {GG:45} Britain wishes to intervene in Greece by sending an air unit to Athens. The British player would have to place an airbase counter in Crete to do this. Legal?

A. No. If Britain first intervened in some other manner (by sailing a fleet to Athens perhaps), she can *then* place airbase counters in Greece in that same phase. But intervention must precede placement.

23.1 & 25.2 & 25.31 {GG:45} If an Axis Minor is activated by Axis intervention after Allied attack, when does the intervenor receive the BRPs?

A. Immediately.

23.1 & 28.23 {GG:45} May a Major Power stage over the hexes of an attacked minor country in order to intervene?

A. Yes.

23.2 After Intervention and alliance occur, the minor country takes its turn in unison with its allies. Otherwise its turn comes immediately after its attacker's turn. If a minor country survives initial attack, it will always get at least one independent turn before Intervention and alliance can occur. See also 12.16.

23.3 If intervening units moved into the Minor during a game turn in which the Minor has already taken an independent turn, the Minor's forces, having already had their turn, may not move or participate in Offensive or Attrition attacks. They are unaffected by any combat results incurred by the intervening power, even if intervening units stack with minor units in order to attack.

23. {19:4:46, GG:45} Can an opponent of the attacker move forces into the invaded minor country during the Movement Phase and out again during the SR Phase and still be considered to have intervened?

A. Yes.

24. CONQUEST OF MINOR COUNTRIES—

24.1 Minor countries are conquered when a hostile unit occupies their capital. They do *not* get one turn to try to recapture it. All remaining minor units are removed from the mapboard, wherever located, at the end of the attacker's Combat phase. Axis Minor Allies are not excepted. (By recapturing a Minor Ally's capital immediately, Germany would avert loss of the Minor Ally's BRPs, but the Minor Ally units would be permanently out of the game.)

24.2 Upon conquest, all hexes of the minor country become controlled by the conqueror at the end of his Combat phase. *EXCEPTIONS:*

24.21 The rule applies only to initial conquest. Normal hex control rules govern whenever the country's capital subsequently changes hands.

24.22 The rule does not apply to Minor Allies if already activated. It does apply to a Minor Ally activated by attack plus intervention.

24.23 If hostile major power ground units are in the conquered country, and can still trace a line of supply at the end of the conqueror's Combat phase, the hexes they are on and the hexes of their supply line do not pass to the conqueror's control. The owner of the units in question chooses exactly which hexes will be his supply route (or routes if more than one is needed), but the routes must be as few and as short as possible and must go to the nearest port or controlled friendly border. The conqueror controls all other hexes. He may not cut the supply route(s) by SRing armor adjacent to them until a later turn.

24.23 {GG:45} "Conqueror ... may not cut the supply route(s) by SRing armor adjacent. .". Does this mean that the conqueror cannot SR armor adjacent to a supply route; or that he may do so, but the supply route remains uncut?

A. The former.

24.23 {25:3:58} Do the special provisions for tracing supply in conquered minor countries apply if supply is traced *through* conquered Minor to units which are not in that minor country?

A. No.

24.24 Greek, Swedish, and Spanish islands, and Spanish Morocco, turn friendly to a conqueror along with their home territory.

24.2 {19:6:46, GG:45} Does the island of Saare (F39) become friendly to the present controller of the Baltic States?

A. Yes, to whomever first controls the Baltic States. Thereafter, normal hex control rules apply (7.1).

24.2 {25:3:58} If a colony is conquered by the establishment of control over all its cities and ports, does the conqueror thereby gain control over all other hexes of the colony?

A. Yes; the conqueror does not need to move through each hex in the colony to establish control over them. Colonies are treated as minor countries, except for the differences set out in 24.4.

24.3 A conquered minor country yields its entire BRP value as printed on the mapboard to the major power which controls its capital during each YSS it is held. If, after such YSS, an opponent gains control of the capital, the ejected owner has one turn in which to drive out the opponent and reestablish control of the capital. If he fails to do so on his next player turn, he loses the BRPs derived from the country immediately (during the Combat phase such failure occurs). If control is lost during the second half of a Winter turn, the losing power *does* receive the BRPs during YSS; but they must be deducted immediately if it fails to regain control during its Spring turn. The opponent who physically occupied the capital would also receive BRPs for the country during YSS in such a case pending a final decision on who controls it. Even though one side must eventually lose these BRPs, both sides may include them in their YSS BRP totals to determine the various maximum spending limits derived from such totals. Luxembourg is treated as if it had a capital for this purpose.

24.3 {GG:45} Does this rule also apply to a conquered *major* power?

A. Yes.

24.3 {GG:45} When a major power loses control of an area on the last half of a Winter turn, must it have controlled that area in the *preceding* YSS in order for duel BRPs to be awarded during the coming YSS? [Compiler's note: **dual**]

A. No. For example, Germany conquers Belgium in Winter 1939. France occupies Brussels on the last half of Winter 1939. Both powers receive Belgium's BRPs during the 1940 YSS.

24.3 see 10.342 & 24.3

24.4 Control of, and any BRPs derived from, *conquered* colonies are treated in the same manner except that:

24.41 A nation must establish control over all cities and ports in a colony in order to receive BRPs for it at YSS. This is true even if the colony has a star symbol for its capital city.

24.42 Once such control has been established, and withstood the enemy's one turn chance to retake a city, the nation continues to receive BRPs at YSS so long as it controls any one city.

24.43 BRPs are deducted only when the nation loses control of all cities and then fails to reestablish control over any one city in its next Combat phase.

EXAMPLE: Algeria is Free French. At the start of 1941 the Axis control Constantine (only). The British receive Algeria's BRPs in 1941 YSS. In the last half of Winter 1941 the Axis capture the last Allied-controlled city, Oran. Both the British and Axis will receive Algerian BRPs in 1942 YSS. The British will have to deduct theirs immediately if they fail to recapture any one Algerian city in their Spring 1942 Combat phase.

24.5 A nation may never derive BRPs from a country or colony controlled by its side at the beginning of a scenario, nor may it lose BRPs from the loss of such territory. *EXCEPTIONS:* Minor Allies in the 1942 and 1944 scenarios are added to the beginning total and are lost when the capital is lost. BRPs are always lost when the Axis fail to retake a partisan-occupied capital.

24.5 & 24.6 {GG:45} Can Germany ever lose BRPs from loss of Paris or Rome in the 1942/44 scenarios?

A. Only when those capitals are lost to partisans.

24.5 & 32.7 {23:4:46} May partisans inflict BRP losses on the Axis every year by moving in and out of a capital which reverts to Axis control after each exit, even though it may be behind Allied lines?

A. No. The capital does remain "Axis-controlled", but subsequent BRP losses are not imposed unless an Axis ground unit has been physically present in the capital in the intervening year.

24.6 A nation may not lose BRPs when it loses a country or colony for which it *did not* receive BRPs during the YSS of the current year. **EXCEPTION:** Minor Allies when their BRPs were received during a year rather than at YSS.

24.6 see [24.5 & 24.6](#)

24.7 COOPERATIVE CONQUEST—Wherever two or more allies have participated in the conquest or reconquest of a country or colony, or in Intervention, any BRPs derived from that action during subsequent YSS may be shared in any agreed manner so long as the proportions do not change from year to year. If the allies are unable to agree, then the BRPs are shared equally, dropping fractions. If one of the participants is conquered, the surviving participant(s) receives all of the BRPs at YSS, provided he controls the area.

24.8 The original conqueror (or original owner) of any BRP-producing territory may not transfer it to any ally, nor may he give control of an objective hex to an ally. Such changes of possession may only be made as a result of Cooperative Conquest (24.7) or reconquest.

EXAMPLE: Italy may allow German units to occupy any or all Albanian hexes, but those hexes (and Albania) remain under Italian control (*see* 7.1). If the Allies conquer Albania and the Axis reconquer it, either Germany or Italy could control Albania. Neither country could receive BRPs for it (*see* 24.5).

EXAMPLE: Italy alone attacks Yugoslavia; occupying and therefore controlling Belgrade. Italy later leaves Belgrade and allows a German unit to enter. This doesn't give Germany any Yugoslav BRPs, nor does it alter the status of Belgrade as an Italian controlled objective hex.

EXAMPLE: The Axis make a Cooperative Conquest of Yugoslavia. Either nation may control Belgrade, whichever one occupied it; and the Yugoslav BRPs may be split in any agreed manner. Regardless of the manner in which Yugoslavia was conquered, if the Allies subsequently occupy Belgrade and hold it for one Axis turn, and one Axis nation alone reconquers Belgrade, that nation receives all of the Yugoslav BRPs and controls Belgrade. However, if the other Axis nation has units in, or makes an attack on, any Yugoslav hex, the reconquest is Cooperative and the resulting BRPs may be split in any newly agreed manner. Belgrade still goes to the nation that occupies it. See 14.29.

24.8 {GG:45} Italy controls Belgrade; partisans capture it. Germany promptly recaptures it. Who gets the Yugoslav BRPs next YSS?

A. Italy.

24.8 {GG:45} The same situation as above but Germany recaptures Belgrade after BRPs have been deducted from Italy a turn or two later?

A. Germany receives the BRPs, with two qualifiers: If German units do not advance into Belgrade after eliminating the partisans, Italy retains control. And if Italian units are anywhere in Yugoslavia, a newly-agreed BRP split is in order (24.8, third example, fourth sentence).

25. AXIS MINOR ALLIES—

25.1 In addition to the various provisions in sections 22 and 24, a number of other special rules apply to Axis Minor Allies. Finland, Hungary, Rumania and Bulgaria are German Minor Allies and are *normally* activated at the start of the Summer 1941 turn. Certain variant counters may activate Turkish or Iraqi rebels as German Minor Allies, or Spain as an Italian Minor Ally. (Where Spain is concerned, "Germany" should be read as "Italy" in all rules pertaining to Minor Allies.) Turkey, Spain and Iraq are *not* treated as inactive minor allies prior to play of their variant counters. Vichy France may be activated as a German Minor Ally by variant counter or by German success on a Vichy (49.4) Activation die roll. Allied attack plus Axis intervention may also activate Finland, Hungary, Rumania or Bulgaria early. Allied Foreign Aid (33.63) may delay or prevent the activation of an Axis Minor Ally even when Axis variant 5 calls for early activation, but cannot make such a country a part of the Allied coalition.

25.1 {GG:45} Do the Axis Minor Allies normally activate at the start of the Summer 1941 game turn, or Axis player turn?

A. The latter.

25.2 If an inactive minor ally is subjected to a DoW, Germany may choose to intervene and must declare war to do so if not already at war with the attacking nation. If Germany does not intervene, no German units may enter the minor ally, the minor units do not become part of the German force pool and may not be replaced if lost, Germany does not receive the Minor Ally BRPs, and the minor may exercise independent turn options in the same manner as any other attacked, unallied minor neutral. German Intervention, however, activates the Minor Ally for all the foregoing purposes even if Foreign Aid expenditures (33.63) would normally prevent activation. (Italy could intervene instead of Germany, in which case the minor would be activated as an *Italian* Minor Ally. In a multi-player game, Italy could do so either with German concurrence, or without German concurrence *if* Germany elected not to intervene or was unable to.) **EXCEPTIONS:**

25.21 If the Minor Ally is not actually invaded, with hostile forces on its soil at the end of its attacker's turn, Germany may send forces into the country without intervening/declaring war. Such action does constitute a garrison (*see* 25.8) and would prevent Russia (if Russia was the attacker) from further attacks on the minor. Neither could the minor forces attack Russian units across the border, in effect German pressure has forced Russia to back down. Russia has lost the BRPs she spent to declare war; peace is restored. This process, in itself, does not activate the Minor Ally.

25.21 {19:6:46} If Russia has troops in Bessarabia but not in Rumania at the end of its turn, can Germany garrison Rumania?

A. Yes.

25.21 {GG:45} If Russia has troops in Bessarabia but not in Rumania proper at the end of its turn, can Germany garrison Rumania?

A. Yes.

25.21 see [21.4 & 25.21](#)

25.22 Intervention would automatically activate Spain or Turkey as Minor Allies of the intervening power regardless of the variant counter held and regardless of any Foreign Aid (33.63) expenditures.

25.22 {4ER, 18:5:19} Does this apply to an Allied power intervening in response to an Axis invasion?

A. Yes

25.22 {GG:45} Does this apply to an Allied power intervening in response to an Axis invasion?

A. Yes; the Allied power would immediately receive that Minor's BRPs.

25.23 If the Allies declare war on Vichy France at a time when any Axis unit is in any Vichy territory, or on Hungary, Rumania, Bulgaria, or Finland when a German unit is therein, Intervention is automatic and immediate. The Axis could intercept initial invasion moves of any type if able to do so.

25.23 {GG:45} If an inactive, *garrisoned* Axis Minor Ally is attacked by the Western Allies, may Axis air fly DAS over the minor's units?

A. Yes.

25.24 Axis Intervention does not activate Vichy France; only the proper variant counter or success on the Vichy Activation die roll can do that.

25.25 If, at the time a minor ally is due to activate, (a) it has been attacked but not yet conquered by Russia, (b) Russian forces are present in the minor ally, and (c) Russia and Germany are not yet at war, then Germany must intervene (23.1) if she wishes to activate that minor. Since Germany must declare war on Russia in order to intervene, activation would, in this rare instance, not occur at the beginning of the player turn.

25.2 {GG:45} Germany destroys her 3-3 Finland garrison in order to stage a 5-4 air unit to Helsinki to support an attack on Sweden. Can Russia now declare war on Finland and thereby become automatically at war with Germany?

A. Yes. This is an exception to the emphatic italics of 21.54, but to rule otherwise would allow Germany to evade the *ground* unit requirement of 25.8. Russia must pay 35 BRPs for the DoW as per 21.51.

25.2 {23:4:46} What happens if Italian (only) units are in Rumania and neutral Russia DoWs Rumania?

A. Russia may not attack Italians (but could force an air or naval unit to change base). Russian forces may move through, and stack upon, Italian units; they may attack a Rumanian/Italian stack as though only Rumania units were present. On the next Axis turn, assuming that Russia's DoW is not revoked, Italy has the choice of (a) removing her units by movement or SR

(on this turn only Italy may SR through Russian hexes), and/or (b) destroying her units, and/or (c) a DoW on Russia in order to intervene. However, if Germany chooses to intervene and Italy is at war with the West, there are no constraints on the Italian units.

25.2 see [23.1](#) & [25.2](#) & [25.31](#)

25.3 Whenever a Minor Ally is activated, its BRPs are immediately added to the German total and continue to be added during each subsequent YSS as long as it is controlled. Its units become part of the German Force Pool; they may be moved by SR, counting against the German SR limit.

25.31 Addition of BRPs occurs at the beginning of the Axis player turn when Finland, Hungary, Rumania, and Bulgaria are activated (Summer 1941 or thereafter as per 33.63 or by variant counter). Activation of Vichy France by variant counter occurs at the beginning of the game turn however.

25.31 {GG:45} The last sentence conflicts with 33.41 and the Sequence of Play. When does Vichy France activate if by variant counter?

A. At the beginning of the Axis player turn. Disregard the last sentence of 25.31.

25.31 see [23.1](#) & [25.2](#) & [25.31](#)

25.32 In all scenarios Germany receives the BRPs for her Minor Allies in addition to her BRP Base, and loses BRPs for them when lost to Allied conquests.

25.33 Excepting Spain and Turkey, Minor Allies are automatically at war with Germany's enemies when activated; no DoW costs are paid.

25.34 Even if activated as a minor ally, Iraq and Vichy France proper yield Germany no BRPs. Vichy colonies may, but rarely; see 49.9.

25.35 If a Minor Ally is activated by Allied attack plus Axis Intervention, any units it loses *before* Intervention are permanently out of the game, and do not become part of the German Force Pool.

25.4 Upon initial activation, Minor Ally units are placed on any hex of their home country, with at least one ground unit in the capital, whence they can be moved and SRed normally. Rebuilt combat losses must also be placed on a supplied, controlled hex of the home country, not in enemy ZOC. At the start of the 1942 and 1944 scenarios Axis Minor Ally units may be placed on any Axis-controlled hex on the map board subject to the following limitations:

25.41 Finnish units may never move farther than six hexes from the Finnish border or coastline. In the 1942 scenario, Finnish ground units may start only in Finland or hexes A47 and B46. In the 1944 scenario they may start only in Finland.

25.41 {25:3:58} Can Finnish units enter countries other than Russia?

A. Yes, but the restrictions of 25.41 still apply.

25.42 Bulgarian units may be placed only in Bulgaria, Yugoslavia, Greece, and European Turkey.

25.43 Rumanian units may be placed only in Rumania, Yugoslavia, East Europe, and Russia. Rumanian units may be placed in Bessarabia (the Eastern Front portion of Rumania) if Russia has not occupied East Europe, or if the Axis has already reconquered that portion of it.

25.44 Hungarian units may be placed only in Hungary, Yugoslavia, East Europe, Poland, and Russia.

25.45 Spanish and Turkish units may be placed only on the Mediterranean Front, with two exceptions: Turkish units may enter Russia and Spanish ground and air units may enter East Europe and Russia, and may SR through the Western Front.

25.45 {4ER, 18:5:19} Should Spain become an Allied Minor Ally per 25.22, could her units enter France?

A. Yes, in this case her geographical limitations would be expanded to include both the Western and Mediterranean Front.

25.45 {GG:45} Should Spain become an Allied Minor Ally per 25.22, could her units enter France?

A. Yes, in this case her geographical limitations would be expanded to include both the Western and Mediterranean Fronts.

25.46 Iraqi rebels may be placed only in Iraq, Persia, Lebanon-Syria, Palestine, Transjordan, and Arabia. Iraqi rebels draw supply from Mosul. If Mosul should be garrisoned by Allied units at the time the Iraq variant is played, the Iraqis have one turn to capture Mosul with an Iraqi ground

unit; if they fail they are eliminated. During their turn of initial creation Iraqi units need not trace supply if Mosul is occupied by Allied units, and therefore may advance into Mosul following a successful attack. If Mosul and Munawir are both garrisoned, the Iraqi air unit may be held off the board on the turn of activation and placed on the following turn. Once activated, the Iraqis are eliminated if the Allies capture Mosul.

25.47 In all cases above (25.41-46), ground units may never enter an area in which they may not be placed. Air and naval units must always be based in accordance with the above restrictions, but may operate freely from their bases. Thus the Spanish navy could base in north Spain and operate in the Atlantic.

25.4 {18:5:19, GG:45} Do these restrictions on placement of Axis Minors apply to the 1939 scenario and Campaign Game as well as the 1942 and 1944 scenarios?

A. Yes.

25.4 {GG:45} May minor allies attack into, or "attrition into", an area they may not enter?

A. Yes; the principles of 22.7 apply.

25.4 {25:3:58} Are there any restrictions on placement/employment of active Vichy units?

A. No.

25.5 Active Minor Allies must conform to the Option being used by Germany on each front. Germany pays reconstruction costs for eliminated units.

25.6 Prior to activation, Germany may have no more than 20 German factors total (ground and air only) in Finland, Hungary, Rumania and Bulgaria as a group. Of these 20, no more than five may be placed in Finland. Germany treats these four minors (but not Spain, Turkey nor Iraq), while inactive, as controlled territory and may freely move, SR and trace supply through them, and may launch attacks from their territory. Germany has the same privileges in Vichy French territory, but exercising them has adverse effects on the Vichy Activation die roll (*EXCEPTION*: Germany can trace supply through Vichy without penalty). Allied units may make cross-border attacks on German units at the border of a minor ally, but could not advance after combat, use air support in the attack, or in any other way violate the territory of the minor unless they are at war with it.

25.6 {19:1:46, GG:45} Are Italian forces allowed within German Minor Allies before activation?

A. Yes. "German" and "Germany" should be read as "Axis" throughout this rule, except that it is Germany, not Italy, who actually controls the minor's hexes.

25.6 {19:1:46} Is the 20-factor limit continuous or assessed only at specific points during the turn; i.e.: could a German player move more than 20 factors through an inactive minor in a turn?

A. Yes, the 20-factor limit applies only to the end of the movement phase and player turn.

25.6 {GG:45} May Germany have more than five factors in Finland *after* activation?

A. Yes.

25.6 {GG:45} An Axis unit, forced to vacate its hex by Allied attrition, has no retreat except into an inactive minor ally. The retreat would put the Axis over the 20-factor limit in minor allies. Is the unit eliminated instead?

A. No, it may retreat. As with a number of other such limits and minimums, the 20-factor cap is judged at the end of each Axis movement phase and player turn.

25.7 An inactive minor ally whose capital falls to the Allies cannot thereafter be activated, and whether inactive or active it does not get one turn to attempt to retake its capital. If either Germany or Italy declares war on any potential Minor Ally, that minor ally may not later be activated.

25.8 Until Fall 1941, Russia, unless already at war with Germany, is prevented from declaring war on bordering Minor Allies by a garrison of at least one German ground combat factor in that Minor Ally. (A replacement counter will do, an Italian unit will not.) Note that Finland has no ports nor beaches; if Germany fails to garrison Finland on opening setup, she can do so later only by dropping her airborne unit there. Turkey may not be so garrisoned before her variant counter is played. Germany may not place a garrison unit in Bessarabia without declaring war on Russia.

25.8 {4ER, 18:5:19} If the Germans start the game in an Axis Minor but then move out, can the Russian declare war on the minor?

A. Yes—the prohibition against a Russian DoW depends on the current existence of a physical garrison.

25.8 {GG:45} If the Germans start the game in an Axis Minor but then move out, can The Russian declare war on the minor?

A. Yes—the prohibition against a Russian DoW depends on the current existence of a physical garrison.

25.8 {19:1:46, GG:45} Can Russia declare war on a garrisoned inactive Minor German Ally *without* declaring war on Germany *after* Fall 1941 or a German violation of the Polish Partition Line?

A. No.

25.8 {GG:45} How does a German garrison in Finland draw supply?

A. See 27.11. Helsinki is, by definition, a supply source even though Finalnd is still inactive. [Compiler's note: Finland]

25. {19:1:46, GG:45} Could Germany/Italy declare war on their own inactive minor allies?

A. Yes. Any garrison units in the country would be temporarily removed until after the minor's forces have been set up. The Axis player may then replace any garrisoning units anywhere in the minor country not occupied by a minor country unit.

26. CONQUEST OF MAJOR POWERS—

26.1 The United States cannot be conquered.

26.2 Germany, Italy and Britain may be conquered by controlling their capital. The conquering power(s) must hold control of the capital for one opposition turn. Conquest occurs immediately after the conquered power fails to regain control of the capital during its combat phase.

26.21 Units which move to counterattack their capital must be in supply from some source other than their capital at the start of their turn.

26.22 Immediately upon conquest (the end of the Combat phase of the conquered nation), or surrender (26.7), all units of the conquered country and its active Minor Allies (if any) are removed from the game.

26.3 In each subsequent YSS the major power controlling the conquered capital receives half (rounded down) of the BRPs the conquered nation began the scenario with, as shown on its scenario card. Control of Paris in a 1942 or 1944 scenario YSS yields 42 BRPs for the Allies; control of Rome in a 1944 scenario YSS would yield the Allies 37 BRPs.

26.4 Should a major capital be occupied on the last half of a Winter turn, the conqueror does not receive the half-BRPs during the ensuing YSS because conquest is not effective until the occupied nation has had one chance to retake its capital. A normal YSS calculation is made for the nation with the occupied capital.

26.5 All hexes in the major power become controlled by the conqueror(s) at the end of the Combat phase in which the conquered nation fails to retake its capital. The provisions of 24.21 and 24.23 apply, except that there is no restriction on the conqueror's SRs. He may freely cut supply lines during his next player turn.

26.6 Non-French colonies, active Minor Allies, and conquests of a conquered power are controlled by no one and belong to the first player to occupy them. Note that such occupation may not be done during a Pass Option, since the hexes are not controlled. All forces of an active Minor Ally cease to exist when its Major power ally is conquered .•

26.6 {23:4:46} If Italy is conquered, do Sardinia and Rhodes pass to Allied control?

A. Sardinia yes, Rhodes no. (The former was and is administratively part of Italy; the latter, a colony.)

26.7 ITALY: A special surrender situation in addition to that listed above can apply to Italy. Italy surrenders if *all* of the following conditions are met:

A. In spring 1943 or thereafter the Allies have a supplied non-airborne unit in mainland Italy at the end of an Axis Combat phase. An Allied presence on Sicily does not count.

B. There are no Axis forces (other than un activated Vichy units) in Africa (including all of Egypt).

C. The Allies control every hex of Sicily, or every hex of both Sardinia and Corsica.

D. The Allies hold the initiative (i.e. they moved first in the current game turn).

26.71 If Italy surrenders as a result of this rule, all Italian-controlled hexes pass to German control. Germany receives half of the BRPs which Italy started the scenario with during each subsequent YSS that she controls Rome. All Italian units are removed from play. The surrender is treated as a conquest for all other purposes.

26.72 At the end of the Combat phase in which Italy surrenders or is conquered, the German player may roll a die and add two to the result. The resulting number is the amount of Italian naval factors (assuming they still exist) that the Germans may seize and use as their own. The German may select any mix of partial counters he chooses to fulfill this number, and may place them in any supplied, German-controlled port(s) on the same front. Neither these nor other Italian naval units may be reconstructed for the duration of the game. If engaged in naval combat these naval factors retain their Italian nationality DRM (29.5712).

26.8 FRANCE: Rules 26.22 and 26.6 do not apply to France. The following special rules apply:

26.81 French attacks while Paris is occupied by Axis units are limited to those which could conceivably lead to the recapture of Paris.

26.811 French attacks on hexes other than Paris are allowable only if success could conceivably permit Exploitation movement into, or a 1-2 or better attack on, Paris.

26.812 French attacks on Paris at 1-3 or 1-4 odds may be made only if an "EX" result would remove all Axis ground units from Paris, *and* other units, Exploiting, from another attack, could conceivably then occupy it.

26.813 Paris may not be attacked by French units unless at least one French attacking ground unit is in supply and thus eligible to advance into Paris after combat. (*EXCEPTION: 26.812 above.*) Although British ground units on a separate hex could participate in the attack, they are ineligible to advance into Paris. In rare instances, however, it might be possible for a British unit to recapture a vacant, Axis-controlled Paris by moving through it. While Paris is occupied, French units in Europe may trace supply only from London (or the U.S. box, but only if London is occupied or isolated) or a captured capital (27.4).

26.814 If France lacks sufficient BRPs to take an Offensive Option in the west, or the defender is able to demonstrate that he could commit DAS in such a way that Paris could not possibly fall, French attacks may not be made and the units that would have provided the necessary DAS may not undertake other missions in that game turn. Even in this event, however, Paris is not considered conquered until after the Allied Combat Phase.

26.815 While Paris is enemy occupied, France may not use an Attrition Option on any front, may use an Offensive Option only on the Western Front, may not make naval interceptions, and may not make a DoW.

26.816 French air units may fly Counterair missions only against those Axis air units which are in position to oppose legal French ground attacks by flying DAS. Air attacks on enemy fleets may not be made, either in port or at sea during the French player turn.

26.817 If French units do reoccupy Paris, those French units on the western front which have not yet attacked may do so without restriction during the remainder of the same Combat phase. However, no retroactive alteration to France's Option selections on other fronts is permitted, nor may air/naval units undertake missions they could not have done at the start of the Combat phase. Air units may, of course, fly Ground Support or Interception in connection with a post-reoccupation Exploitation attack.

26.82 France may not move any units from France outside European France while Paris is occupied.

26.83 French units are not all removed upon conquest; the status of French colonies is determined by die rolls. See rule 49 for full details.

26.84 Any British units in France when France falls are subject to 26.5. They may not trace any part of their supply line through Vichy France.

26.8 {25:3:58} Do these restrictions still apply if Paris is only Axis-controlled, not occupied?

A. Yes, although normal attacks would be permitted if the Allies regained control of Paris during the movement phase.

26.9 RUSSIA: Special rules apply to Russia. Russia is *not* conquered just because her capital is lost to the Axis.

26.91 Axis conquests of Moscow or Leningrad result in immediate Russian loss and Axis gain of 15 BRPs for each city. This is a one-time event; if control of a city seesaws back and forth there is no BRP loss/gain upon second and subsequent Axis captures. But during each YSS that the Axis controls either city, 15 BRPs per city are added to the Axis and subtracted from the Russian totals. Russia does *not* get one turn to attempt recapture before these adjustments are made.

26.91 {25:3:58} If Russia should recapture Moscow, does Germany then lose 15 BRPs?

A. Yes—if it had the 15 BRPs added during the previous YSS (i.e., if Germany had captured Moscow during a previous year).

26.92 Whenever at the end of a Russian player turn the Russians have less than 50 factors of ground and air factors on the mapboard, *and* combined Axis strength inside Russia's original boundaries exceeds the Russian total by at least a 3:2 ratio, Russia is considered defeated and must make a one-time offer to surrender. Partisans in Russia count toward the 50 factor limit.

26.921 If the Axis accept the surrender, each objective hex not yet in Axis control has a Russian unit placed on it; these objective hexes count toward Russian/ Allied victory conditions at the end of the scenario. The Axis receives half of the Russian BRPs (as shown on the Russian scenario card) during subsequent YSS; they cease to receive YSS BRPs for Moscow and Leningrad. The Axis must maintain a 45 factor garrison within Russia's original borders, at least 30 factors of which must be ground units, until the end of the scenario. Air and naval units which comprise part of the 45 factors may conduct missions from their Russian bases; the 45 factor limit must be met at the end of each Axis Movement phase and player turn following the Russian surrender. The Axis may *not* later declare war on Russia again in order to capture more objective hexes.

26.921 {19:6:46} If Russia surrenders, which side assumes control of partisan occupied objective hexes which were previously controlled by the Axis?

A. Axis.

26.921 {GG:45} If Russia surrenders, which side assumes control of partisan-occupied objective hexes?

A. Whichever side last controlled them before the partisan's presence.

26.921 {GG:45} Do non-objective hexes pass automatically to Axis control when Russia surrenders?

A. No, but the Axis units can pass through them unimpeded (on other than a Pass Option) and extend their control. They can never, of course, control the Soviet-occupied objectives.

26.922 If the Axis reject the surrender in order to capture more objective hexes, they may not later change their mind. Russia remains in the game until the instant her last combat factor inside Russia (original borders) is eliminated. The Axis do not receive Russian half-BRPs until said last factor is eliminated; they do continue to receive the BRPs from Moscow and Leningrad in the interim. As above, the Axis must maintain a 45 factor garrison (30 of which must be ground) in Russia until scenario end, even after eliminating the last factor.

26.923 If the German and Italian players disagree on whether to accept a surrender the player with the most combat factors inside Russia's original borders prevails.

26.924 If the Axis fall short of the required 45 factor garrison, at the end of either their Movement phase or player turn, they must permanently concede one Russian objective hex of their choice previously under their control to the Russian player and pay a 15 BRP penalty. Furthermore, the Axis may not use SR for purposes other than correcting the garrison shortage until the 45 factor garrison has been reinstated. This penalty can be reassessed as many turns as the garrison does not meet its requirements, or until the Axis no longer control a Russian objective hex. It can only be assessed once per turn, however.

26.92 {19:6:46, GG:45} Does "combined Axis strength" include naval factors?

A. No.

27. SUPPLY—

27.1 SUPPLY SOURCES:

27.11 All capitals of major and minor powers are supply sources for the side that controls them, provided that their country has unit counters represented in the game. Lisbon and Jerusalem, for example, do not

qualify. *EXCEPTION:* Moscow is a supply source for Russia only.

27.11 {GG:45} Does " ... provided that their country has units represented in the game" mean a capital is a supply source only when its units are in play on the board?

A. No. capitals of minor countries are supply sources at all times, even though their unit counters have been eliminated from play or not yet brought into play. Capitals of countries that *never* have armed forces are not supply sources.

27.11 & 36.1 {GG:45} May German units trace supply from Italian-controlled sources and vice versa before they are allied?

A. Yes.

27.12 All ports in Libya are supply sources for Axis only; all ports in Egypt are supply sources for Allies only. These supply sources are contingent on other eventualities (35.1, 35.5, 37.3). Tunis and Beirut are sources of supply for French units, but this supply cannot be shared with other nationalities. After these ports become Free French or Vichy they can supply only Free French or Vichy units respectively. Of course, any port can be used to receive supply from a designated supply fleet (27.23).

27.12 {25:3:58} If the Axis capture an Egyptian port and the Allies recapture it, does it again become an Allied supply source?

A. Yes.

27.12 & 35.4 & 35.5 {GG:45} If Beirut or Tunis is a Vichy supply source, are Vichy units counted against the 18-factor limit?

A. No. The Vichy units can then be considered to be tracing an overland supply route.

27.13 All fortress hexes supply units in the fortress hex, and only those units—units outside a fortress hex may never trace a supply line thereto. *EXCEPTIONS:* Malta ceases to supply Allied units in Malta if the Allies control neither Gibraltar nor Suez/Alexandria and Sevastopol as per 5.58.

27.13 see [5.55 & 15.4 & 27.13](#)

27.14 The entire east edge of the board as far south as Z53 is a supply source for Russia only.

27.14 {4ER, 18:5:19} What constitutes the "east edge of the board"?

A. Any non-playable hex off the east edge—e.g. O60—south to and including Z54 is considered a Russian supply source. If the Lend-Lease route has been opened this is extended south to GG46, but not for the purposes of rule 40.5.

27.14 {GG:45} What constitutes the "east edge of the board"?

A. Any non-playable hex off the east edge—e.g., O60—south to and including Z54 is considered a Russian supply source. If the Lend Lease route has been opened, this is extended south to GG46 (but not for the purposes of rule 40.5).

27.15 Mosul functions as an Iraqi supply source if Iraq becomes a German Minor Ally (33.41-#1).

27.16 The United States is a supply source only if both London and Paris are Axis-occupied or isolated. This is true whether or not the U.S. has declared war. Units in the U.S. box are always automatically in supply.

27.17 Greek units on Greek islands are automatically in supply. Spanish units in Spanish Morocco may be supplied by sea through Tangiers despite the lack of a port there.

27.18 Konigsberg and Durazzo are supply sources for, respectively, Germany only and Italy only at the start of the 1939 scenario/Campaign Game. They lose this status as soon as a normal land supply line is opened to these areas.

27.1 {25:3:58} Can British units trace supply from Allied capitals, such as Paris?

A. Yes—this is not prohibited by Rule 34. Note that 45.5 expressly forbids such supply from Russian sources, clearly implying that the Western Allies are allowed to trace supply from each other's supply sources.

27.2 SUPPLY LINES:

27.21 Each supply source may supply an unlimited number of units unless specified otherwise.

27.22 A unit is in supply if it can trace a line of controlled hexes, free of enemy ZOC, between itself and a supply source. Enemy ZOC over the unit and/or the source does not block this supply line as long as all hexes in the supply line between the unit and the source are free of enemy ZOC. Units adjacent to a supply source are always in supply unless both the supply source and the adjacent unit are in the ZOC of the same enemy unit. Supply lines, like ground units, may cross water without naval assistance at a Crossing Arrow. The controlled hexes may be hexes

controlled by the power tracing the supply line and/or hexes controlled by allies of the tracing power. Allies may not deny each other the opportunity to trace supply lines over hexes which they respectively control.

27.22 {4ER, 18:5:19, GG:45} A unit is adjacent to a friendly supply source; both unit and source are in the ZOC of the same enemy armored unit. However, the unit can trace a legal supply line out of the capital, back to itself, through another hex or hexes. Is it in supply or not?
A. Yes

27.22 & 32.6 {GG:45} Can the Allies trace supply through a partisan-controlled hex?
A. Only if the hex was Allied-controlled before the partisan moved onto it.

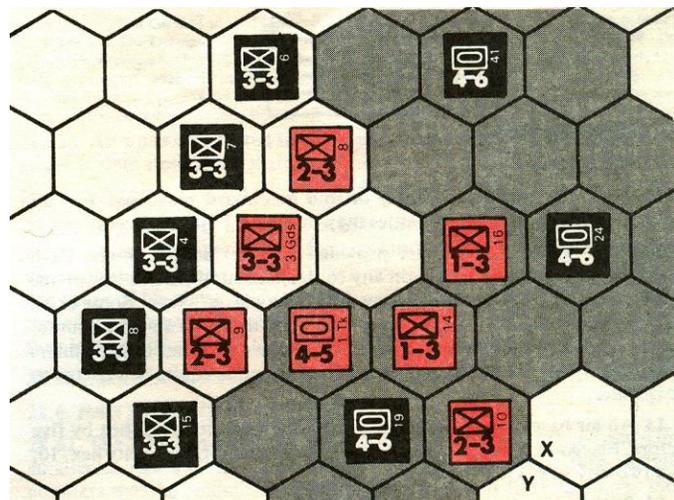
27.23 Supply over water is more complex. A fleet must be designated to carry supply. A land route must be traceable from the supply source to the fleet's base. The fleet may do nothing else—neither Intercept, Sea Escort, nor perform any missions—during the game turn it carries supply.

27.231 The fleet may change base during Movement, and should such base change open a sea supply line to the units which were otherwise unsupplied, such units are considered supplied at the start of their turn. They may move and are not subject to elimination for lack of supply. The converse is equally true: should such a base change place any units out of supply, they are not in supply at the beginning of their turn and may not move. If a fleet is eliminated while changing bases, any units it was intended to supply are isolated barring the availability of another fleet to take its place.

27.232 Each naval factor may supply one ground unit (or airbase)—thus a 9-factor fleet could supply nine ground units, partial fleet counters could supply lesser numbers. One fleet counter could provide supply to more than one port/Bridgehead on the far shore.

27.24 The supply line is now traced from the source, by land, to the base of the designated fleet, thence across water to a port or Bridgehead (islands without a port may also be supplied by sea through any one non-alterable coastal hex designated by the occupant), thence by land to the supplied unit(s). Both land portions of the line must be composed of controlled hexes and free of enemy ZOC. Units *in* a port or Bridgehead can be supplied by sea even though the port/Bridgehead itself is in enemy ZOC. Bridgehead counters may receive sea supply lines in this manner only if they were placed as a result of seaborne invasion.

27.24 & 37.3 {25:3:58} Can sea supply be traced from a supplied Western Front port around Africa to Suez?
A. No—sea supply routes must be traced on the mapboard.



EXAMPLE: The Black player has just finished his move, leaving all of the Red units isolated and out of supply except for the 10th Infantry, which although in a German ZOC, is not surrounded by them. The shaded hexes are the ZOC of the armored units forming the encirclement. Note that in all cases supply can be traced into a ZOC, but never through it. The Red 10th Infantry then is supplied through both hexes X and Y.

27.25 ZOC ends at the water's edge. Hostile armor in Calais or Harwich, for example, would not prevent tracing a sea supply line through the English Channel.

27.26 Although Gibraltar itself may not supply units outside Gibraltar, a supply line could be traced from London through Gibraltar to a Mediterranean port or Bridgehead. This would require two designated fleets: one to carry supply from England (or elsewhere) to Gibraltar; one

at Gibraltar to carry it onward in the Mediterranean. Similarly supply could be traced from a Mediterranean source to a port/Bridgehead in the Atlantic provided two fleets were used. Supply may be traced similarly through Kiel and Istanbul in either direction. A fleet counter in a two-front port could provide supply to ports/bridgeheads in either or both fronts.

27.26 {4ER, 18:5:19} Could supply be traced through the port of Gibraltar via a fleet from say a British or Egyptian port?
A. Yes

27.26 {GG:45} Could supply be traced through the port of Gibraltar via a fleet from, say, a British or Egyptian port?
A. Yes.

27.26 & 37.3 {19:6:46, GG:45} Can units in excess of Egyptian port restrictions be supplied by fleet from England around the Cape, as in SR to Suez?
A. No.

27.27 Units of the western Allies may not trace supply from Russian or Russian-controlled sources and vice-versa. However, western units could trace supply across hexes controlled by the Russian to their own source of supply and vice-versa.

27.28 French units in Europe may trace supply only from Paris until 1942. If Paris is Axis-occupied, they may trace supply only from London or from a captured capital (or from the U.S., but only if London is also occupied or isolated).

27.29 Axis supply lines may not be traced through partisans.

27.3 EXEMPTIONS:

27.31 Naval, air and partisan units are always in supply (*EXCEPTION:* 35.1); they are never required to trace supply lines.

27.32 Armor units which Exploit are in supply for one turn after Exploitation.

27.33 Airborne units which paradrop are in supply for one turn after the drop.

27.34 Armor or airborne units which are moved by SR in the same player turn following their Exploitation or drop lose the advantages of 27.32 & 33.

27.4 CONSEQUENCES TO UNSUPPLIED UNITS:

27.41 Unsupplied units retain their full combat factor. They may attack during an Offensive Option; they are counted when in contact with the enemy during an Attrition Option.

27.42 Unsupplied units may not move during their Movement or Combat phase. They may not advance to attack the enemy, may not advance after combat, may not exploit a Breakthrough, and may not advance to occupy an Attrition-gained hex. They may be moved by SR, but only if supply has been restored in the interim and a legal SR path exists.

27.42 & 49.6 {24:6:46} If British units in Vichy were unsupplied at the start of the turn in which France fell, may they SR out per 49.6?

A. No. Rule 27.42 prevails unless supply is restored before the SR phase.

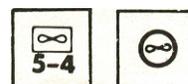
27.43 Unsupplied units are eliminated if still unsupplied at the end of their player turn. This is so even if they were in supply at some intermediate point of their turn. Elimination occurs at the end of the player turn, units are lost after unit construction; therefore units lost from lack of supply cannot be reconstructed during the turn of their loss.

27.44 Supply status is determined during the Movement phase, after movement of naval units but before movement of any other unit. A previously unused fleet could SR to the front and provide supply to a previously unsupplied unit to save it from elimination, but the resupplied unit could not move during that SR phase.

27.44 {GG:45} A supplied unit begins its Movement Phase by moving one hex to an unsupplied hex. May it continue to move?

A. Yes. Once supply status has been determined, a supplied unit may use its full movement factor during both the movement phase and (if applicable) exploitation.

27.44 see [13.8](#) & [27.44](#)



28. AIR WARFARE—

28.1 AIR BASES:

28.11 Each city (including ports) on the mapboard may base five air factors. A hex containing two cities may therefore base ten factors.

28.12 Each major power is also provided three air base counters. Each counter may be initially placed on any controlled, supplied hex—even one in the ZOC of enemy armor—at any point of a player's turn. Some or all may be placed as part of initial setup. No more than one air base counter may be placed on the same hex. After initial placement, air base counters move only by SR. They count against SR limits and require Sea Escort to cross water.

28.12 {19:6:46} Could Britain initially place airbase counters in France if Britain never had any other units in France?

A. Yes; but only with French concurrence.

28.12 {GG:45} Could Britain initially place airbase counters in France if Britain never had any other units in France?

A. Yes; but only with French concurrence. Note that this reply applies to initial placement, *not* opening setup.

28.13 An air base counter increases the basing capacity of its hex by five factors. Placed on a non-city hex it may base five factors; on a city hex, 10; on a two-city hex, 15.

28.14 British air units may not be placed on French air base counters and vice versa before 1942. Russian air units may not be placed on air base counters of the western Allies and vice-versa. All air base counters may be used only by air and airborne units of their own nationality during the player turn of initial placement on the board. *EXCEPTION:* lent Italian air forces can use German air base counters.

28.14 {4ER, 18:5:19, GG:45} Can Italian air bases base Italian air units that have been lent to Germany?

A. Yes

28.14 {4ER, 18:5:19, GG:45} Can German air units use Italian air base counters?

A. Yes, once actively allied, but only after the player turn of the base's initial placement.

28.15 If an air base counter is overrun or placed out of supply by enemy action, it is removed and placed on its country's capital. If out of supply it is not relocated until the end of its own SR phase (and does not count against SR limits), but if overrun it is relocated immediately. Should more than one counter be placed on the capital in this manner, the capital still can base no more than 10 air factors. Should the capital be enemy occupied or controlled at the time of overrun, the counter is destroyed and may not be returned to play. *EXCEPTION:* If Moscow has fallen, overrun or isolated Russian air base counters are placed east of the Urals by the Russian player. Overrun or isolated American air base counters are returned to the U.S. box, from where they must be deployed to Europe in order to be used again.

28.15 {GG:45} What happens to an air unit on an isolated air base that must be relocated at the end SR Phase?

A. Rule 28.24 applies.

28.16 If SR of an airbase counter reduces basing capacity below the number of air factors present, the excess factors must also be SRed (separately) or be eliminated.

28.2 MOVEMENT:

28.21 An air unit may *stage* (change bases) up to eight hexes during its Movement phase. The new base hex need not be on the same front as the old base. It *must* have been controlled by the staging side at the start of its turn. Staging may not be intercepted. See also 19.3.

28.21 {4ER, 18:5:19} May a player, advancing during movement, create an unused airbase on a forward hex gained during that Movement Phase and then stage an air unit to it on the same Movement Phase?

A. No

28.21 {GG:45} May a player, advancing during movement, create an unused air base on a forward hex gained during that Movement Phase and then stage an air unit to it on the same Movement Phase?

A. No.

28.21 {GG:45} May an air unit stage to an unsupplied air base?

A. Yes.

28.22 An air unit may fly four hexes from its base to perform air missions during the Combat Phase of Offensive options. Note that this is

in addition to staging—an air unit may stage eight hexes during Movement Phase, then fly an additional four hexes during Combat. See also 19.5 and 20.1. Defender's air units may also fly four hexes to perform defensive tasks. Surviving factors always return to the same base they have begun the Combat phase in—should the enemy have occupied their base while they are "in the air," 28.24 applies.

28.23 Neither staging, Combat phase flight nor defensive flight may pass over any hex which contains any neutral land. Air units moving by SR *may* cross hexes which are part water, part neutral land. See 16.5 for full details on the movement of air units by SR.

28.23 {25:3:58} May air units stage over enemy-controlled territory?

A. Yes; note that 19.3 specifically prohibits this during Pass options, but normally it is permitted.

28.23 see 23.1 & 28.23

28.24 Air units on bases which are overrun by enemy units are not destroyed. They move to the nearest controlled air base that has room to base them. Such movement may not be intercepted. Should two such bases be equidistant, the owning player chooses. Should no such air base exist within eight hexes, then the air units *are* destroyed. An air unit forced to move in this manner may still perform missions from its new base, if not Counteraired. Should a base be captured while its air units are absent on a defensive air mission, this rule is applied at the end of the Combat phase. Surviving air units are then placed at their new base as if they had been at their former base when it was captured.

28.24 {4ER, 18:5:19, GG:45} Are air units in a base hex occupied by both a friendly ground unit and an enemy airborne unit forced to move before the resolution of combat?

A. No.

28.24 {19:6:46} Are air units in flight, unable to return to their base of departure displaced to a new base within 4 or 8 hexes from the old airbase or the target hex?

A. Eight hexes from the old airbase.

28.24 {GG:45} Are air units in flight, unable to return to their base of departure displaced four hexes or eight hexes? Measured from their old airbase or their target hex?

A. Eight hexes from the old airbase.

28.3 EMPLOYMENT:

28.31 During any full game turn air units may perform one, and only one, mission, offensive or defensive.

28.32 Defending survivors of a Counter air mission may not perform any mission, offensive or defensive, for the remainder of the game turn. Newly constructed air units may not fly any mission, offensive or defensive, during the game turn they are constructed.

EXAMPLE: In Spring, the Axis move first. During the Allied portion (second half) of the Spring turn, any newly constructed Axis air units may not fly. Any Axis units that flew offensive air missions may not fly. Any Allied survivors of Axis Counterair attacks (*Exception:* 28.433), and any Allied air that flew during the Axis turn, may not fly. Comes Summer: it is now a new game turn. Whichever side has first turn in Summer: Allied units newly constructed in the Spring turn may fly, Allied units that just flew offensive missions in Spring may fly, and Axis units just subjected to Allied Counterair in Spring or that just flew defensive missions during the Allied turn may fly. ("Fly" in the foregoing example does not refer to staging nor SR movement—these are always permitted provided the attendant criteria are met for the type of movement being employed.)

28.33 Any air unit which performs a mission, or is Counteraired or newly constructed should be inverted until the end of the current game turn.

28.4 OFFENSIVE AIR MISSIONS:

28.41 Offensive air missions (Ground Support, Counterair, Interception, and Attack on Naval Bases) are flown during the Combat phase of an Offensive Option.

28.42 GROUND SUPPORT:

28.421 Air units within four hexes of a hex being attacked by ground units may fly to the attacked hex and add their combat factor to that of the attacking ground units. Any Exploitation attacks may be similarly supported by air units which have not yet flown in the game turn. Once ground support has been placed, that hex must be attacked during regular combat or exploitation at legal odds or the air units are eliminated. They cannot be withdrawn without making a legal attack.

28.421 {4ER, 18:5:19} If an air unit is placed to give ground support for a seaborne invasion but the invasion is aborted by an intercepting naval force, is the air unit eliminated because a legal odds attack can not be made?

A. No—the air unit couldn't make an attack of any kind without ground forces and therefore is not forced to attack, but 28.455 would apply to the extent that the air unit's attempt to attack counts as an Offensive air mission.

28.421 {GG:45} If an air unit is placed to give ground support for a seaborne invasion but the invasion is aborted by an intercepting naval force, is the air unit eliminated because a legal odds attack can not be made?

A. No—the air unit couldn't make an attack of any kind without ground forces and therefore is not forced to attack, but 28.455 would apply to that extent that the air unit's attempt to attack counts as an Offensive air mission and it is inverted.

28.422 The total air factors attacking any one hex may not exceed three times the total ground factors attacking that hex.

28.423 Attacking air units are destroyed by an "A" result in ground combat. If the attacker suffers an "Ex" result he may elect to take his losses from either air, ground, or bombarding fleet units in any combination, so long as he eliminates sufficient factors.

28.424 If, in Ground Attack, attacker is using units on one hex to attack enemy units on two or more adjacent hexes in one attack, he may add Ground Support to the attack if his air units are able to reach any one of the attacked hexes.

28.43 COUNTERAIR:

28.431 Air units within four hexes of enemy air bases may fly to that hex and attack the enemy air. Only uninverted defending air factors may participate in the ensuing air combat.

28.432 AIR COMBAT: Both sides roll a die to determine combat losses. The die roll is subject to modification as follows:

A. The larger side receives a + 1 DRM for each factor in excess of the smaller side.

B. Nationality modifiers are applied as shown in the Air Force Nationality DRM Chart. The lowest modifier is used when a side consists of nationalities with different DRMs.

Air Force Nationality DRM Chart

DRM	Nationality
0	Germany, U.S., Britain
-1	Russia, Italy, France
-2	All others

28.4321 The side with the lower aerial combat die roll (after modification) is the loser and must eliminate air factors equal to the difference between the modified die rolls. If the difference is greater than the loser's air factors, the loser proceeds to eliminate sufficient *inverted* air factors that may be present in the hex to equal the difference between the modified die rolls. If, after eliminating all uninverted and inverted air factors present in the hex, the difference has not been reached, there is no further penalty.

28.4322 The winner then eliminates half as many (fractions rounded down) air factors present in the hex as were actually removed by the loser.

28.4322 {4ER, 18:5:19, GG:45} Does the winner remove half of the total defending factors lost including any inverted factors which were lost?

A. Yes

28.4322 & 28.641 {4ER, 18:5:19} The die says the loser has to eliminate one air factor. He happens to have some of his partials in use, and it develops that he has to lose *two* factors because of this, per 28.641. Does the winner now have to eliminate a factor per 28.4322?

A. No

28.4322 & 28.641 {GG:45} The die says the loser has to eliminate one air factor. He happens to have some "partials" in use and it develops that he has to lose *two* factors because of this, per 28.641. Does the winner now have to eliminate a factor per 28.4322?

A. No.

28.4323 Ties are resolved as drawn battles. A third die roll is made; each side loses that number of air factors, but neither side loses more factors than were present in the smaller force.

28.4323 {4ER, 18:5:19} Does the "smaller force" include inverted factors? For example if 3 factors attack a hex with 2 active factors and 3 inverted factors and a drawn battle results what is the greatest number of factors each side can lose; 2 or 3?

A. Yes; 3.

28.4323 {GG:45} Does the "smaller force" include inverted factors? For example, if three factors attack a hex with two active factors and three inverted factors and a drawn battle results, what is the greatest number of factors each side can lose: two or three?

A. Yes; three.

28.432 {19:6:46, GG:45} When mixed nationality air forces are involved in air combat, how are losses distributed between nationalities of the same side?

A. Use the 29.572 naval method.

28.432 {GG:45} The defender commits DAS over a hex which also contains defending air units which are *not* going to fly. The attacker intercepts the DAS and inflicts losses exceeding the DAS factors. Are the excess losses taken from the non-flying air units per 28.4321?

A. No. This situation does not parallel a counterair attack; the air units on the ground are not liable to losses. The attacker might have separately counteraired it; in that case, there would be two distinct air combats in the hex.

28.433 Surviving factors of both sides return to base, are inverted, and may not be used for the remainder of the game turn. *EXCEPTION:* If defender (a) had the larger force in combat *and* (b) was the winner; then surviving *defending* factors are *not* inverted and are available for further use during the game turn. All restrictions on counteraired units elsewhere in the rules do not apply to such factors.

28.434 Attacker may counterair a hex containing only inverted enemy air. The defender has zero factors to participate in air combat; die rolls are made and losses extracted accordingly. No nationality modification is made to defender's die roll.

28.435 An air unit based in Malta may, at its option, decline combat when Counteraired. However, it is inverted if it so declines.

28.44 INTERCEPTION:

28.441 After defender has committed his air units to DAS missions, attacker may use air units which have not yet flown nor been successfully counteraired during the game turn to intercept such support. Interceptions may also be made in connection with Exploitation attacks.

28.442 Interception must take place at the hex where defender has placed his DAS. The intercepting air must, of course, be based within four hexes of the target hex.

28.443 Attacker may intercept with a force of any size, it need not equal defender's force although a numerically inferior force is less likely to succeed in the resulting aerial combat (28.432).

28.444 If defender had the larger force in combat and wins the aerial combat, his survivors may continue their DAS mission or return to base and invert at his option. Otherwise, his survivors (and, always, intercepting survivors) must return to base and invert.

[Compiler's note: 28.444 above is from the Question Box on 18:5:46; 28.444 below is from the fourth edition rules.]

28.444 If defender has the larger force in combat and wins the aerial combat, his survivors may continue their DAS mission or return to base and invert at his option. Otherwise, his survivors (and always intercepting survivors) must return to base and invert.

28.45 ATTACKS ON NAVAL BASES:

28.451 Air units within four hexes of an enemy naval base may attack naval units therein. Such attack is not resolved until after resolution of all ground combat.

28.451 {25:3:58} Are naval units in a base attacked by air units eligible to conduct interception missions against the attacker's fleets during the attacker's Combat Phase?

A. Yes—the air attack is resolved after all naval combat is resolved and the defender's surviving fleets have returned to their base.

28.452 If enemy air units are present at the attacked hex, and if they have not yet flown during the game turn, they must be attacked by Counterair and must be defeated. If this is not done, the naval units may not be attacked. Defender's air units near, but not in, the naval base hex may not fly defensively—attacker need concern himself only with air units in the

naval base hex itself. EXCEPTION: Air units in Malta have the option to decline Counterair combat (28.435), in which event the attacker's entire force is free to attack naval units in Malta.

28.452 {4ER, 18:5:19} Does "defeated" in this rule mean complete elimination or only that the defending air factors take the greater loss in air combat?

A. The latter

28.452 {GG:46} Does "defeated" in this rule mean complete elimination or only that the defending air factors take the greater loss in air combat?

A. The latter; to be specific, the attacker's modified aerial combat die roll is higher than the defender's.

28.452 {19:6:46} If the Counterair attack fails, does the attempt by the other air units that were to attack the naval forces count as a mission, even though these air units cannot now attack?

A. Yes.

28.452 {GG:45} If the Counterair attack fails, does the flight by the other air units that were to attack the naval forces count as a mission, even those units which cannot now attack?

A. Yes.

28.453 Air factors not used for Counterair purposes then attack the naval forces. Each attacking air factor rolls one die. A die roll of '1' or '2' eliminates a naval factor; a die roll of '3' or '4' has no effect; a die roll of '5' or '6' eliminates the attacking air factor.

28.453 {19:6:46, GG:46} Can the attacker elect to destroy one factor each from two fleets rather than two factors from one fleet?

A. No.

28.454 Attacker may also attack defender's naval units at sea, if defender attempts naval Interception and his course comes within the four-hex range of attacker's uncommitted, eligible air unit regardless of the Option in effect. Combat is identical except that at sea it takes a '1' die roll to eliminate a naval factor, and a '6' die roll to eliminate an attacking air factor.

EXAMPLES: 15 British air factors attack a German 9-factor fleet and 5-4 air unit in Brest. The British commit 6 factors to Counterair. Both players roll a "3" for aerial combat so the British win the aerial combat (4:3). The German loses one air factor, and the rest are unusable for the remainder of the turn. The British Counterair force takes no losses. The nine remaining British air factors attack the naval forces by rolling 3, 5, 1, 5, 1, 1, 2, 6, 4. Four naval factors are lost along with 3 attacking air factors. Note that the British survivors of the Counterair combat are not eligible to also join in the attack on the naval unit; this would be performing two missions in one turn.

28.455 Should air units move to attack an enemy naval base but the naval factors therein are subsequently displaced by a successful ground attack first, the air units may not attack although their attempt to do so counts as an Offensive air mission.

28.45 {4ER, 18:5:19, GG:45} [Compiler's note: this is listed in all three places as 28.435—454, but it actually refers to 28.45.] Suppose five factors of air attack a single naval factor and the latter is eliminated on the first roll. Must the remaining four air factors still attack and chance their own elimination?

A. Yes.

28.5 DEFENSIVE AIR MISSIONS:

28.51 DEFENSIVE AIR SUPPORT (DAS):

28.511 During the Combat phase of an enemy Offensive Option, after the opponent has allocated his Ground Support air missions, uninverted defending air units within four-hex range of any hex under potential ground attack including attack by seaborne invasion or airdrop may fly to that hex. Their factors are added to those of the defending ground units in determining the odds of ground combat. These added air factors remain basic, they are not multiplied by terrain as are defending ground units.

28.512 Defender may similarly commit air units which have not yet flown in the game turn to Defensive Air Support (hereafter referred to as DAS) during exploitation attacks.

28.513 DAS may be given to ground units only and may not exceed three times the basic number of ground factors defending in that hex. Air units committed to DAS are vulnerable to Interception by uncommitted enemy air units.

28.513 {19:6:46} May you allot more air factors than could legally be counted in the combat odds, in anticipation of intercepting aircraft reducing your DAS strength?

A. No.

28.513 {GG:46} May one allot more air factors than could legally be counted in the combat odds in anticipation of intercepting aircraft reducing the DAS strength?

A. No.

28.514 If attacker has committed Ground Support and defender has committed DAS to the same ground battle, there is no direct air interaction. Each side simply adds its factors to those of its ground units.

28.515 Defending air units can be destroyed by adverse results in ground combat. (Note that an air unit which is merely based in an attacked hex, and has not been committed to DAS is *not* destroyed—it is merely displaced (*see* 28.24) if attacker advances into its hex after combat.) Should an exchange leave defender with any factors surviving, he may elect to take his losses from either air or ground units or both, in any combination, so long as he eliminates sufficient factors.

EXAMPLE: Eight German ground factors attack a French 2-3 Infantry unit (doubled on defense). Odds are 8-4. The German also attacks with four air factors making it a 12-4 (3-1) attack. The French player commits three of his own air factors to fly DAS for the battle, making the odds 12-7 (1-1). A "CA" is rolled and the French must counterattack at 5-12 (1-3). They roll an "A" and both the infantry unit and the three French air factors are eliminated. The German units may occupy the vacated hex and the German air units return to base.

28.516 Air units committed to DAS have performed a mission even if the attacker does not attack their hex.

28.516 {4ER, 18:5:19} Does DAS placed at the beginning of a combat phase and not intercepted or attacked remain there for possible Exploitation combat?

A. No

28.516 {GG:46} Does DAS placed at the beginning of a Combat Phase and not intercepted or attacked remain there for possible Exploitation combat?

A. No.

28.52 ATTACK ON NAVAL UNITS AT SEA:

28.521 Defender may attack naval units moving at sea during either Movement or Combat phase of an Offensive Option, and during the Movement phase of an Attrition Option, if their course brings them within the four-hex range of his air units eligible to fly. The moving naval units may be attacked in their base hex (since they enter the water portion of it as soon as they leave port), in their target hex, or in any intermediate hex.

28.522 The attack is resolved as per 28.454.

28.6 PARTIAL AIR COUNTERS:

28.61 The 5-4 air counters (as well as 3-4 and 2-4) may be broken down into smaller counters at any time during their owner's player turn. Smaller counters may be recombined into larger ones at any time. Counters must always be of the same nationality: the Axis could never use a minor ally air counter in this manner.

28.61 {GG:46} May air counters be broken down during the opponent's turn in order to allocate DAS?

A. Yes.

28.62 A player may never have more air factors in play than are allowed by the Force Pool of his scenario card. Subject to this limitation, a player may construct partial air units. Such partial counters must be placed on, either during Construction or SR, and combined with another partial counter during the turn of construction; a full 5-4 air counter must result. Axis Minor units are not considered partial counters and may be reconstructed, provided that the minor was active at the time of loss.

28.63 EXCEPTION: The British have 19 air factors shown in their 1939/Campaign Game force pools. They may construct their 20th air factor and have four 5-4 air units. They may do this either by gathering four 1-4 air factors on the same hex in Britain, where the fifth factor may be constructed without need of a partial counter to do so; or by combining their 1-4s; substituting a 2-4 or 3-4 counter, then constructing one factor and combining with four factors somewhere on the board. If any factors have been lost in combat Britain can follow the same procedure, constructing factors as necessary. If four factors are lost, Britain may construct her fourth 5-4 without further ado. Although the 1-4s are shown in the British Force Pool, combat losses may not be reconstructed unless a 5-4 counter results; nor may Britain ever have more than 20 air

factors in play at one time.

28.64 Breakdown and buildup of air counters are always subject to availability of air counters with which to do so.

28.641 If a player must lose some air factors due to combat and does not have partial factors available to "make the correct change," he must lose more factors than he otherwise would have.

28.641 see [28.4322](#) & [28.641](#)

28.642 Players, particularly during an Offensive Option Combat phase, will have a tendency to allot a factor of air to this mission, a couple more to that, etc., without bothering with the partial counters. This is often convenient. Players should remember, however, that such breakdowns may be limited by the number and size of partial counters available to them. Should an opponent doubt the ability of the allotting player to allocate his air as advertised, that opponent is entitled to require the allotting player to place his partial counters on the mapboard.

28.65 Partial air counters count as one unit apiece for all purposes, including SR, even if stacked together. (However, a player could combine, say two 1-4s on the same airbase into a 2-4 just before SR.)

28.65 {GG:46} An inverted 3-4 air and an unused 2-4 air unit are stacked together; may they be combined to a 5-4 for SR?

A. Yes. The 5-4 is inverted if left on the board. However, it could be broken down again at destination to the same inverted 3-4 and face-up 2-4.

28.66 Minor country 2-4 air units have no partial counters and therefore may not be broken down. Spanish, Turk and Iraqi 2-4 units may be reconstructed only if those nations become active Minor Allies. Should Vichy France have partial air counters at the time of activation as a Minor Ally, such partial counters could be reconstructed.

28.66 & 49.11 {GG:46} May Vichy air units use French partial counters to break down or absorb partial losses?

A. Yes. Free French may also, and Vichy naval units may absorb partial losses similarly.

28.67 When an air counter is going to use its factors to perform different missions on the same hex, it need not use partial counters to do so.

EXAMPLE: A 5-4 unit could fly to a hex containing enemy ground and air, use two factors for Counterair and three for Ground Support, without having to split up into partial counters. It would, of course, have to split up—or lose the entire 5-4—if either mission sustained casualties.



29. NAVAL WARFARE—

29.1 BASING:

29.11 Each port on the mapboard may base up to 36 naval factors. (EXCEPTION: Malta, 41.1). A hex containing two ports may therefore base up to 72 factors.

29.11 {GG:46} Britain, with four 9-factor fleets at Gibraltar, sails two to Egypt and two more from Britain to Gibraltar during the movement phase. The Egyptian-bound fleets are intercepted and turned back. What happens?

A. The overstack is involuntary and no fleets are destroyed, provided Britain does remedy it by the end of the SR phase. However, the two overstacked fleets may not perform missions, intercept, provide supply nor sea escort during the remainder of the player turn.

29.11 {23:4:46} Is a two-port hex considered as one naval base or two for interception purposes?

A. Yes. [Compiler's note: What??? See 29.54.]

29.12 A fleet is considered based on the front which contains the ocean area on which its port abuts, even though the actual port may be on an adjacent front.

EXAMPLE: A fleet based on the north German (Baltic) coast is based on the Eastern Front, even though its port hex lies on the Western Front.

EXAMPLE: A fleet at Marseilles is based in the Mediterranean, even though its port hex lies on the Western Front.

In neither example above does the fleet's base necessarily require an Offensive Option on the Western Front in order for the fleet to conduct an Offensive mission. (See 20.1)

29.13 Kiel, which was connected by canal, is a two-front port for all purposes; fleets based there may conduct missions on either the Eastern or Western Front. An eastern-based fleet may move to Kiel during Movement, then during Combat perform a mission on the Western Front or vice versa. If the Allies capture Kiel (and whenever Kiel changes hands thereafter), it ceases to be a two-front port. This simulates combat damage to the Kiel canal. When the canal is inoperative fleets could be based in either the Atlantic or Baltic port, or some in each; it is up to the players to keep them straight. Kiel again becomes a two-front port as soon as either side has controlled it for two consecutive complete game turns.

29.14 Gibraltar is also a two-front port for all purposes capable of sustaining missions on either the Western or Mediterranean Front and has all the other advantages of a two front port. Fleets at Gibraltar may escape to either the Western or the Mediterranean front if overrun by enemy ground units (see also 29.26).

29.15 Istanbul is also a two-front port for all purposes capable of sustaining missions in either the Mediterranean or Black Sea and has all the other advantages of a two-front port except that supply and passage into or from the Mediterranean outside the Turkish Straits is not allowed unless all land hexes composing the strait (Z33, Z34, AA31, BB31) are controlled by friendly forces.

29.16 Only Russian and German fleets may base in any Russian port or in the Baltic States. Russian fleets may only base in Russian controlled ports. Russian fleets based in the Black Sea may SR to the Mediterranean if they gain control of a Mediterranean port and both sides of both crossing arrows in the Turkish straits are under friendly control.

29.17 Fleets based in the U.S. are under special restrictions:

29.171 They may perform Shore Bombardment and Invasions only if no friendly port exists on the Western Front. They may perform Sea Transport only if all friendly Western Front ports are ineligible to receive SR because of Axis units being adjacent.

29.172 They may carry supply only if London and Paris are both controlled or isolated by the Axis. For purposes of this rule, *isolation* is defined as: no supply line traceable from the capital to an Atlantic port and seaward. French or British fleets may change base or SR to the U.S. box and perform this function even *before* America enters the war (thus, they are able to supply a British counterattack against occupied London).

29.173 They may Intercept at any time (but only after America enters the war) and are considered to be at maximum range on the Interception Table.

29.18 French fleets must base only in France, French colonies, or captured French-controlled ports until Spring 1942 (*Exception:* 29.172). When France falls they must return to Marseilles (unless Britain holds variant counter 3) and undergo the usual Vichy halving process. French fleets returning to Marseilles due to the fall of France are allowed free passage past Gibraltar. Germany may subsequently base Vichy fleets in Vichy colonies if she wishes, or in Marseilles or Corsica; if Vichy becomes a German Minor Ally the Vichy fleets may be based with no restrictions.

29.19 If French fleets are forced to move because their base is captured, and no legal French base is available on their front, they may temporarily move to a British-controlled port on the same front provided no British units are present. They must, at their first Movement or SR opportunity, return to a French controlled port or be eliminated. They may perform no other activities while based in this temporary port.

29.2 MOVEMENT:

29.21 Fleets may change base during the Movement phase of Offensive or Attrition Options. They may change base during a Pass Option only if no enemy fleets are based on their front, and if their course to their new base does not pass within four hexes of enemy air units. (This is true even if the fleets/air units in question are ineligible to Intercept.) Base changes are vulnerable to Interception by enemy naval or air units. The new base must be on the same front as the old base and must have been controlled by their side at the start of their player turn. Base changes are made before any movement of air and ground units.

29.21 & 29.573 {19:6:46} Are fleets which, in an attempt to change base during the Movement Phase, are intercepted and defeated forced to return to their original base? Can they perform any other functions during that game turn?

A. Yes (this is an exception to the last sentence of 29.33); they can do anything a fleet can normally do except change base during the Movement Phase.

29.21 & 29.573 {GG:46} Are fleets which are intercepted and defeated, in an attempt to change base during the Movement Phase, forced to return to their original base? Can they perform any other functions during that game turn?

A. Yes. They are forced back to their original base, but they have not yet performed a mission and are not inverted (this is an exception to the last sentence of 29.33).

29.22 Fleets have unlimited range on the front on which they are based, during both Movement and Combat phase, but they cannot move out of that front except by SR.

29.23 Fleets may move through any water or partly water hexside. Neither enemy-controlled land, neutral land, nor presence of enemy units is any obstacle to such movement. *EXCEPTIONS:* Fleets may not move through or into the Suez canal unless the adjacent land hexes are controlled by their side. They may not move through any strait containing a crossing arrow unless both land sides of the arrow are under friendly (not neutral) control. They may move into such a strait to carry out a mission in the strait hex, so long as they exit the same side they entered and do not pass through the strait. Fleets may not cross the front boundary near Gibraltar except during SR, and then only if Gibraltar is not controlled by a hostile force. Fleets may not enter C35 (Oslo) nor any river.

29.24 A fleet may not change base nor SR directly from the Black Sea to the Baltic nor vice versa.

29.25 Each U.S. fleet may initially move out of the U.S. box only during SR, as an initially deploying unit (16.7). (*EXCEPTION:* 29.17) Fleets which have not yet been initially deployed to Europe should be so signified by being placed upside down in the U.S. box. With this one exception, U.S. and Allied fleets may freely move to and from the U.S. box during both Movement and SR. Fleets so moving enter/exit the map at any west edge hex EE1-E18 inclusive.

29.25 & 42.2 {19:6:46} Are additional US fleets assigned to protect a Murmansk convoy counted against the overall SR limit of 10 or against the Initial Deployment limit of 6?

A. Both if the fleet has not yet initially been deployed; otherwise only as the SR limit.

29.25 & 42.2 {GG:46} Are additional US fleets assigned to protect a Murmansk convoy counted against the overall SR limit of ten or against the Initial Deployment limit of six?

A. Both if the fleet has not yet initially been deployed; otherwise, only as the SR limit.

29.26 Fleets at bases which are overrun by enemy ground units are not destroyed. They are displaced to the nearest controlled port on the same front that has room for them (but may not go from the Black Sea to the Baltic, nor vice-versa). Such movement may be Intercepted. Should two such ports be equidistant, the owner of the fleets chooses. Should no such port exist on the same front, the fleets are destroyed (*EXCEPTIONS:* Fleets in Two Front ports: (Gibraltar, Kiel, Istanbul) may escape to either front. The owner may choose the front, even if a base in the non-chosen front is nearer, but must place the fleets in the closest controlled port on the chosen front. See 47.4 for fleets in Suez.

29.26 & 29.58 {19:6:46} If a naval unit is displaced from its base and then intercepted and defeated so that it has to return to its original base, what happens?

A. It must change base to the next nearest available friendly port on that front—tracing its path from the point of the interception. It is again subject to interception by another, as yet uncommitted, enemy fleet/air. If no such other friendly port is available on the front, the defeated fleet is eliminated.

29.26 & 29.58 {GG:46} If a naval unit is displaced from its base and then intercepted and defeated so that it has to return to its original base, what happens?

A. It attempt to return to the next nearest available friendly port on that front—tracing its path from the point of interception. It is again subject to interception by any as yet uncommitted enemy fleets/air. If no such other friendly port is available on the front, the defeated fleet is eliminated.

29.27 Naval hexside movement from Suez to LL30 or LL31 is considered a move of two hexes.

29.2 {25:3:58} May inverted (previously used) naval units make a base change?

A. Yes—a naval unit may change base and perform an activity resulting in inversion, in either order, in the same turn.

29.3 EMPLOYMENT:

29.31 During any full game turn, a fleet may do any one, but no more than one, of the following:

29.311 Carry supply (see 27.23).

29.312 Conduct an Offensive mission (Shore Bombardment, Sea Transport, or Invasion) during an Offensive Option Combat phase. *EXCEPTION:* unused portions of a fleet engaged in a seaborne invasion may lend Shore Bombardment support to that invasion (29.433).

29.312 & 29.433 {GG:46} Two 9-factor fleets carry two 3-3s to an invasion. Interception eliminates a naval factor and consequently one 3-3. May the 8-factor fleet now provide two factors of shore bombardment?

A. Yes.

29.313 Intercept opposing fleets (during own or opponent's turn).

29.314 Perform Sea Escort (during SR phase).

29.315 Escort a Murmansk Convoy (*during SR phase—see rule 42*).

After performing any of the above functions or being newly constructed, the fleet counter is inverted until the end of the current game turn.

29.32 A fleet may change base during Movement phase and still perform any one of the above functions. A fleet that has performed any one of the above functions except Sea Escort or Murmansk Escort may still be SRed during the SR phase.

29.33 After the Movement phase, a fleet may not again change base until the SR phase. Fleets that leave their base during Combat phase must return to the same base, as must any fleet that intercepts during Movement phase. In the course of any one Combat phase, a given fleet may not return to its base and leave again, NOR enter any other port more than once (except to debark units in case of an aborted mission), NOR enter the sea portion of more than one target hex, (unless an alternate route to its destination is unavailable) even though it takes no action there. Fleets that leave a base during the Movement phase may not return to the same base during that phase.

29.34 Newly constructed fleets may not perform any of the 29.31 functions during the game turn they are placed on the mapboard.

29.35 A fleet counter carrying supply may not leave its base (except to change base during Movement or SR phase). A 9-factor fleet being used to supply only three units could not use its six surplus factors for any other purpose.

29.4 OFFENSIVE MISSIONS:

29.41 SHORE BOMBARDMENT:

29.411 Attacker moves his fleets to the water portion of a coastal hex containing enemy ground units which are to be attacked by his own ground units in a seaborne invasion. For each three naval factors, one factor is added to the strength of attacker's ground units when determining odds of the ground combat.

29.412 Attacker may combine Shore Bombardment with Ground Support from his air units in the same attack, in support of ground units.

29.413 Attacker may not use Shore Bombardment in support of an Exploitation attack or in any attack against a hex not under attack by seaborne invasion. *EXCEPTION:* Shore Bombardment may be used in support of non-exploiting, attacking ground units against any coastal fortress or one hex island.

29.413 {4ER, 18:5:19} Are Leningrad & Sevastopol considered fortresses such that shore bombardment may be conducted against them in connection with a ground attack?

A. Yes

29.413 {GG:46} Are Leningrad and Sevastopol considered fortresses such that shore bombardment may be conducted against them in conjunction with a ground attack?

A. Yes.

29.413 {19:6:46} If the coastal fortress is also a port with a 9 factor fleet may the attack still be made using shore bombardment?

A. Yes; defending fleets do not prevent shore bombardment.

29.413 {GG:46} If the coastal fortress is also a port with a 9-factor fleet, may the attack still be made using shore bombardment?

A. Yes, defending fleets do not prevent shore bombardment.

29.413 {19:6:46} Can shore bombardment be used with non-exploiting units attacking across a Crossing Arrow?

A. No.

29.413 {GG:46} Can shore bombardment be used with non-exploiting units attacking across a crossing arrow?

A. Not normally. If attacking a one-hex island (e.g., Scapa Flow) across a crossing arrow, then yes. Rule 29.431, second sentence applies to the Danish islands for shore bombardment purposes only.

29.414 Bombarding fleets are not affected by an "A" result in the ground combat. If attacker suffers partial losses from an exchange, he may choose to take some or all of his losses in naval units in order to preserve other units. Such losses are taken at the Shore Bombardment rate however: three naval factors must be lost to equal the loss of one ground or air factor.

EXAMPLE: Two seaborne invading 3-4 infantry units and four bombarding fleets attack a tripled 2-5 armor unit on a beach hex at 3-1. 'EX' is rolled; defender loses his armor unit. Attacker may choose to lose only his two infantry units. If he wishes to have an infantry unit survive in order to occupy and control the attacked hex, he could choose to lose one infantry unit and 9 naval factors.

29.414 {23:4:46} Suppose, in the rulebook example, the attacker had had only one 3-4 unit. In order to preserve it, would he have to lose two 9-factor fleets (to match the defender's losses) or only one fleet (to match the loss of a 3-4)?

A. He would have to lose two fleets.

29.42 SEA TRANSPORT:

29.421 Fleets move from one controlled port to another controlled port on the same front, carrying ground or air units. Each two naval factors may transport one ground or air combat factor.

29.421 & 29.65 {GG:46} May a unit be sea transported by two fleets in the same manner as sea escort?

A. No.

29.422 Fleets need not be based at the port of embarkation. They may move from their base to the port of embarkation, thence to the port of debarkation, thence back to their original base. There may be more than one port of embarkation for one Sea Transport mission; but there may not be two ports of debarkation. The latter requires two independent missions.

29.422 & 29.573 {19:6:46} Are units being Sea Transported returned to the port of embarkation or the fleet's base (assuming the two are different) if the mission is intercepted and defeated?

A. The fleet's base.

29.422 & 29.573 {GG:46} Are units being Sea Transported returned to the port of embarkation or the fleet's base (assuming the two are different) if the mission is intercepted and defeated?

A. The port of embarkation.

29.423 Ground or air units may move their full ground movement factor during the Combat phase in which they are Sea Transported. It costs them no movement factors to embark, one factor to disembark. Enemy armor adjacent to a port of embarkation reduces land movement accordingly—ground units embarking in a port in enemy ZOC would pay two MF to embark, not zero. This applies even if both the ground unit and the fleet which is to carry it begin their turn in the same port hex.

EXAMPLE: A 4-5 armor starts its turn next to a port. It moves to the port hex (1 MF), embarks there (0 MF), and disembarks at a distant port (1 MF); it may then move three additional hexes from the port of debarkation.

29.423 {4ER, 18:5:19} The reference to ground MFs for air units is confusing. Does an air unit pay one MF to disembark and therefore can only fly a total of three hexes to perform a mission?

A. Yes—but it would not have to pay a two MF cost for embarking in enemy ZOC.

29.423 {GG:46} The reference to ground MFs for air units is confusing.

Does an air unit pay one MF to disembark and therefore can only fly a total of three hexes to perform a mission?

A. Yes—but, unlike ground units, it would not have to pay a two MF cost for embarking in enemy ZOC.

29.423 {23:4:46} May an air unit be sea transported to a port where it could become overstacked after combat?

A. No, the port must have the basing capacity to receive the air unit, as determined at the end of the Movement Phase.

29.424 Ground or air units thus transported may engage in combat after debarkation.

29.424 & 29.573 {19:6:46} May units being Sea Transported which are intercepted, defeated and returned to port still able to move and/or perform combat?

A. Yes; even though the Sea Transport mission has been aborted it still counts as a mission and therefore its units still have the same capabilities even though they disembarked in a different port.

29.424 & 29.573 {GG:46} May units being sea transported which are intercepted, defeated and returned to base still able to move and/or perform combat?

A. Yes; even though the Sea Transport mission has been aborted, it still counts as a mission and therefore its units still have the same capabilities even though they disembarked in a different port. Note, assess one MF for disembarking at the port in addition to any MFs they may have spent prior to that.

29.425 Although Sea Transport takes place during the Combat phase, units being transported may not move twice; rather, they move during the Combat phase only. Air units must have begun the player turn in their port of embarkation; the port of debarkation is then treated as their new air base. They may not perform Counterair missions that player turn, and attacker must announce any intended air missions at the time he announces his other air missions.

29.426 Ground units which were unsupplied at the start of their turn may not be moved by Sea Transport, because of the debarkation cost.

29.427 All Sea Transport must be concluded prior to resolution of any ground combat.

29.428 Both ports of embarkation and debarkation must have been under friendly control at the start of the transporting player's player turn.

29.429 Sea Transport may not be used to land forces on a Bridgehead counter unless the Bridgehead hex also contains a port.

29.43 SEABORNE INVASIONS:

29.431 Invasions may be directed against any beach hex, Gibraltar (see 5.6), or single hex white island. Copenhagen and I31 can be invaded only by fleets based in Baltic ports. Ground units defending against Invasion are tripled, even if simultaneously attacked from an adjacent land hex or by airborne drop.

29.432 If the target hex contains a 9-factor fleet, at the start of the player turn, Invasion may not be attempted there. *EXCEPTIONS:* If no ground units were in such hex, an airborne drop could drive the fleet out and permit Invasion. If such an airborne drop is to be made, attacker's fleets may enter the invasion hex despite the presence of enemy fleets. If attacker should change his mind and not make the airborne drop, no invasion may be made.

If the target hex contains naval factors, but not a 9-factor fleet, thus allowing a Seaborne Invasion, those factors are displaced to the nearest friendly port on the same front. They may attempt to intercept the invasion from their new port if otherwise eligible to do so.

29.432 {4ER, 18:5:19} Would nine naval factors (for example 8 Spanish and 1 Italian) prevent the invasion of a port beach hex, or is a 9 factor fleet counter necessary?

A. The latter.

29.432 {GG:46} Would nine naval factors (for example eight Spanish and one Italian) prevent the invasion of a port beach hex, or is a 9-factor fleet counter necessary?

A. The latter.

29.432 {19:6:46} If an airborne drop drives a fleet out, thus permitting an invasion, on an otherwise undefended beach, may a bridgehead counter still be placed?

A. No—the invasion hex would be controlled by the attacker prior to the actual invasion.

29.432 {GG:46} If an airborne drop drives a fleet out, thus permitting an invasion on an otherwise undefended beach, may a bridgehead counter still be placed?

A. No—the invasion hex would be controlled by the attacker prior to the actual invasion.

29.432 & 29.5 {4ER, 18:5:19} Could naval factors displaced to a friendly port on the same front by a seaborne invasion of its port beach hex elect to automatically intercept the invasion force before displacement?

A. Yes. They aren't displaced until an enemy ground unit controls their hex, therefore the invasion hex is still their base at the time they sail to intercept.

29.432 & 29.5 {GG:46} Could naval factors displaced to a friendly port on the same front by a seaborne invasion of its port/beach hex elect to automatically intercept the invasion fleet before displacement?

A. Yes, but not exactly "before displacement". These aren't displaced unless invasion succeeds and an enemy ground unit controls their hex. At interception decision time, they have the same opportunity to intercept or not that a fleet in any other port would have.

29.433 For Invasions, three naval factors are needed to carry one ground factor. Air may not be carried. Any number of units may be carried, up to the capacity of the invading fleets, but only two units may attack the target hex (plus any airborne units which drop). The attacking units may receive Shore Bombardment factors from any excess naval factors not engaged in carrying ground units; they may also receive Ground Support from any air units in range.

EXAMPLE: Two 9-factor fleets carry a 4-5 armor unit and a 1-3 infantry unit. Only 15 naval factors are required to carry the ground units; the other three may provide one factor of Shore Bombardment.

29.433 see [29.312](#) & [29.433](#)

29.434 Invading units must start their turn in supply, in a port. Unlike Sea Transport, they may *not* move to reach their port of embarkation. Said port must be the base of the fleet which carries them, although fleets on the same front could change base to that port during their Movement phase.

29.435 Provided that at least one initially attacking unit is armor, and one initially attacking unit survives to occupy the target hex, and that more armor is in reserve aboard the Invasion fleet, Breakthrough and Exploitation may be achieved. If the attacker also happens to have ground units not participating in the invasion already adjacent to the beach, such units could *not* participate in any resulting Exploitation *unless* the invasion hex is also attacked by land in combination with the invasion. The armor unit which must attack the beach hex to create a Breakthrough can come from either the seaborne invasion force or the adjacent land units.

29.436 If the Invasion succeeds (at least one initially invading ground unit surviving and landing), a Bridgehead counter may be placed. Ground units aboard the Invasion fleet which did not participate in the attack may also be placed on the Bridgehead, up to the five-unit stacking limit. If the target hex contained no enemy ground units, success is automatic and a Bridgehead counter may be placed (but *not* if the target hex was already controlled by attacker's side). Invading units may not attack enemy units adjacent to the target hex, except by Exploitation attack. (In such case one armored unit would have to "attack" the undefended beach to establish a Breakthrough hex and would be ineligible to Exploit).

29.436 see [9.11](#) & [29.436](#)

29.436 see [14.4](#) & [29.436](#)

29.437 The attacker may not take Exchange losses from embarked units that did not participate in his initial attack. He may choose to take Exchange losses from naval factors providing Shore Bombardment, but not from those carrying the Invasion force, at the three-for-one Shore Bombardment rate. Fleets are not affected by an "A" result; neither are those ground units that did not participate in the actual attack.

29.438 A Bridgehead hex not containing a port may not be reinforced by SR nor Sea Transport. The attacker could reinforce only by conducting subsequent "Invasions" against that hex until he captures a port.

29.438 {GG:46} Does this rule prevent the SR or staging of an air unit into a bridgehead?

A. No, but it does prevent the SR of an airbase into a bridgehead.

29.43 & 29.57 {GG:46} The Lorient hex has two separate beaches—what happens if it is invaded from both directions? And how are interceptions handled?

A. The two invasions are separate missions and must be intercepted separately, even if interception is in the target hex. Interceptors must sail to the northern or southern (or both) water portions as appropriate. Ground combat is still handled as one battle.

29.5 INTERCEPTION:

29.51 When attacker moves his fleets during the Movement phase of Offensive or Attrition Options, or during the Combat phase of an Offensive Option, defender may attempt to intercept with any of his fleets based on the same front. Interceptions may not be attempted unless the countries involved are already at war; a player may not declare war during his opponent's turn in order to Intercept. Fleets carrying supply, performing Sea Escort, or SR may not be Intercepted.

29.52 Whenever defender wishes to Intercept, attacker must indicate the exact course(s) of hexes taken by his moving units. Defender then chooses a hex at which he will intercept. He may choose the hex where attacker's fleets are based (since they enter the water portion of that hex as soon as they leave port), or the destination hex or any intermediate hex.

29.52 {4ER, 18:5:19, 22:1:46, GG:46} Could Italian fleets based in the Med intercept British fleets based at Gibraltar performing missions in the Atlantic by intercepting them in the base hex?

A. No—and this would apply equally to similar situations in Kiel and Istanbul. Fleets based in a two-front port may be intercepted in their base hex only by enemy fleets based on the front through which they will move to perform their mission. [Compiler's note: despite the number, this question appears in the fourth-edition rules in the rightmost column, near the bottom.]

29.52 {GG:46} If the *target* hex is a two-front port, may the defender attempt interception in the target hex with fleets from both fronts?

A. Yes.

29.53 Naval Interception may be attempted at only one point along any given fleet's course; although defender's air units might also attack that fleet at one or more other points.

EXAMPLE: Italian fleets from Taranto, Tripoli and Tobruk sail independently. rendezvous south of Crete, and proceed thence to a mission. The Allies could attempt three different Interceptions (which would have to originate from three different bases) against the three groups *before* they combine. If the Italians had instead combined their fleets by sailing the Taranto fleet to Tripoli, thence to Tobruk and onward, the Allies could have attempted to intercept only once, at any point between Taranto and the ultimate destination (inclusive).

29.54 All naval units at a given base must attempt Interception against the same target. If the Axis were moving two interceptable missions in the Mediterranean, four Allied fleets at Gibraltar could not be split up into two groups of Interceptors—but the Gibraltar fleets could attempt to Intercept one mission while fleets from other ports attempted to intercept the other. If fleets from more than one base do attempt to Intercept the same enemy mission, they must select a common hex at which Interception will be attempted.

29.54 {19:6:46} Can different fleets in the same hex, but different ports, intercept different missions?

A. Yes. Note that fleets in a hex with more than one port must declare which port they are in as soon as they enter it. Also note that fleets in separate ports within the same hex attempting to intercept the same mission must roll twice for interception—once for each port.

29.54 {GG:46} Can different fleets in the same hex, but different ports, intercept different missions?

A. Yes. Note that fleets in a hex with more than one port must declare which port they are in as soon as they enter. Also note that fleets in separate ports within the same hex attempting to intercept the same mission must roll twice for interception—once for each port.

29.55 During Movement the attacker is required to indicate *all* naval base changes he will make before the defender decides whether and where to attempt Interception. Similarly, during Combat phase, attacker must announce *all* naval missions he will undertake before defender makes Interception decisions. Attacker must specify what ground units, if any, are aboard his fleets and he must specify destinations.

29.56 The foregoing does not prevent attacker from leaving some of his naval units uncommitted. Such uncommitted units may themselves attempt to Intercept defender's intercepting fleets before defender's fleets

reach their Interception hex. (Theoretically, defender could then counter-counterintercept attacker's counterinterceptors and so on, until one player or the other had no more uncommitted fleets.) Counter-Interceptions of this sort may also be made by attacker's fleets and by his ally's fleets, regardless of the Option they have chosen on that front. Defender's fleets may also be attacked by attacker's uncommitted air, if in range. After defender has made all Interception rolls (but before interception combat) attacker announces all naval and air counter-interceptions. Combat is resolved in inverse order; the fleets sailing last resolve their interceptions first.

29.56 {GG:46} Suppose a counter-interception succeeds in the same hex where an interception has already succeeded? Do the fleets join together in one naval battle?

A. No. Combat is still resolved per the last sentence of 29.56.

29.57 The defender counts the hexes along his chosen route from his naval base(s) to the Interception hex(es) counting his port hex itself as the first hex traversed and rolls the die once for each base involved. Success or failure is determined from the Interception Table printed on the mapboard. The attacker then announces any Counter-Interceptions he wishes to attempt against defender's successful interceptors; these are rolled for, and, if successful, resolved. Units which fail to Intercept are not considered to have performed a mission and may be used for other purposes during the remainder of the game turn, but may not try again to Intercept during the current player turn. Fleets based in the U.S. box are considered to be at maximum distance for Interception attempts.

EXAMPLE: An Italian fleet attempts Sea Transport from Taranto to Tripoli. One British fleet from Gibraltar and two from Alexandria attempt to intercept it in the Tripoli hex. The Interception die roll for Gibraltar fails, but the one for Alexandria succeeds. Italy now attempts to Counter-Intercept the Alexandria fleet at II24 with a second Taranto fleet and succeeds. Italy also announces an air attack by a unit from Tobruk on the Alexandria fleet in II24. France then tries to Counter-Intercept the second Italian fleet, at FF24, with fleets from Marseilles and succeeds. Italian fleets from Naples now try to and do Counter-Intercept the French at DD18. Two British fleets from Gibraltar try to and do Counter-Intercept the Naples fleets at CC19. Finally, an Italian fleet from Livorno manages to intercept the Gibraltar fleets at CC17.

The combats are resolved in reverse order of the listing above: beginning with the Livorno fleet vs the Gibraltar fleets, and ending with the surviving factors of the Alexandria fleets vs the original Sea Transport mission.

The British, although they have one remaining uncommitted fleet in Gibraltar, cannot attempt to intercept the Livorno fleet with it because of rule 29.54. The earlier Interception failure by some of the Gibraltar fleets, however, does not prevent the other British fleets there from making their successful attempt against the Naples fleets.

The air and naval attacks in II24 can be resolved in either order the Italian player chooses. Had the fleet been attacked by naval and air in separate hexes, the order would depend on which attack the fleet encountered first along its course.

If the Alexandria Interception die roll, or any later one, had failed, Counter-Interception opportunities would have ended. A side may not announce an attempt, roll the die, then announce another against that same target.

29.571 NAVAL COMBAT: If interception succeeds, both sides roll a die to resolve naval combat with the side rolling the higher number being the winner (ties are won by the intercepting force). Each side's naval combat die roll is subject to modification due to nationality and relative size.

29.5711 The larger sized force in any naval combat is always entitled to a favorable die roll modification (hereafter referred to as DRM) if it has at least a third more naval factors than its opponent. The amount of the DRM is determined by the Naval Advantage Chart.

NAVAL ADVANTAGE CHART

Ratio of naval factors to opponent's naval factors

1.33:1 1.67:1 2:1 3:1 4+ :1

DRM	+1	+2	+3	+4	+5
-----	----	----	----	----	----

29.5712 DRMs must also be applied to naval combat for the nationality of the respective combatants. If a force is comprised of two or more nationalities the lower of the respective DRMs applies.

NAVAL NATIONALITY DRMS

DRM	Nation
+2	Germany
+1	United States, Britain, Sweden
0	French (including Vichy & Free French)

-1 Italy (if battle in or south of hex row N)

-2 Russia, Turkey, Spain, Italy

29.572 The loser of a naval battle must eliminate naval factors equal to the difference between the two sides' respective naval combat die rolls (after modification). If the losing side has 18 or more naval factors involved in the battle his losses are multiplied by the number of 9-factor fleets (or their equivalent) which he employed in the battle. The winner of the naval battle then eliminates half (fractions rounded down) as many of his own naval factors as lost by the loser. Naval losses from a force of mixed nationality must be distributed equally among the nationalities involved (with any remnant loss which cannot be divided equally being taken by the nationality having the most factors involved; or if equal factors were involved—the nationality with the lower DRM).

29.572 {4ER, 18:5:19} How many naval factors are lost in a naval battle where the modified die roll is a tie?

A. None; although the interceptor wins the battle and forces cancellation of the mission there are no naval losses.

29.572 {GG:46} How many naval factors are lost in a naval battle where the modified die rolls are a tie?

A. None; although the interceptor wins the battle and forces the cancellation of the mission, there are no naval losses.

29.573 The loser of a naval battle must immediately return to port; any mission it may have been on and not yet accomplished is cancelled for that turn.

EXAMPLE: A British 9-factor fleet attempts to Sea Transport a 1-3 ground unit from Gibraltar to Malta. Italy decides to Intercept with two 9-factor fleets; the Interception die roll succeeds. Both sides roll a "3" for naval combat, but Britain's die roll becomes a "4" (+1 nationality) and Italy's becomes a 5 (+3 for 2:1 advantage and -1 for nationality). The Italians win the battle. The British lose one naval factor and return to Gibraltar. Had the Italians rolled a "1" (prior to modification) they would have lost the battle and two naval factors and the British could have continued their mission after losing one naval factor.

29.573 see [29.21](#) & [29.573](#)

29.573 see [29.422](#) & [29.573](#)

29.573 see [29.424](#) & [29.573](#)

29.574 Any intercepting fleet (but never a transport, invasion, or bombardment fleet, or fleet changing bases) may, before combat is resolved, elect to break off combat. In such cases it automatically loses the battle, but its losses are halved (fractions rounded down) from what they would normally be under rule 29.572, and may in no case exceed half of its factor strength. The winner's losses are also reduced correspondingly. If the loser should then "win" the modified die roll, neither side loses any factors.

EXAMPLE: Four British fleets from Gibraltar and one from Port Said attempt to intercept four Italian fleets. The Gibraltar fleets, but not the Port Said fleet, fail the Interception die roll. The British player chooses to break off combat because of the adverse odds faced by his single fleet. Each side rolls a '3', which modifies to: Britain 4, Italy 7. Britain would have lost three factors and Italy one, but because of Britain's decision to run for it she loses only one while Italy loses none. Britain could not have lost more than four of her nine factors no matter how adverse the die roll.

29.575 In case France and Britain both wish to Intercept the same enemy mission (before 1942) and can't agree, the player with the most naval factors on the front prevails.

29.57 {19:6:46, GG:46} If a naval and air interception of a naval mission occurs in the same hex, which attack is resolved first?

A. The interceptor's choice.

29.57 {19:6:46, GG:46} Have air/naval interceptors, whose intended naval target was destroyed or forced to abort due to previous interception attacks, performed a mission?

A. Yes.

29.57 {19:6:46} May fleets which fail their Interception die roll be intercepted by an eligible enemy air or naval unit?

A. No.

29.57 {GG:46} May fleets which fail their interception die roll be intercepted by an eligible enemy air or naval unit?

A. No.

29.57 see [29.43](#) & [29.57](#)

29.58 After Combat resolution intercepting survivors return to their

original base. An Intercepted force may continue on its original mission (or base change) if it won the battle, or may choose to abort and return to its base(s). Should it choose to abort, any ground/air units being carried must be landed at the port of embarkation.

29.58 {GG:46} If enough units are turned back to a given port of embarkation to create an overstack there, must the excess be eliminated?

A. Yes, if not remedied by the end of the SR Phase. Note that, in addition to the SR possibilities, units might have unused MFs which can be used immediately upon landing.

29.58 see [29.26](#) & [29.58](#)

29.59 If Interception combat losses reduce a Sea Transport or Invasion fleet to the point where it lacks the naval factors required to carry its ground or air units, these units are immediately eliminated as necessary (air units can be broken down to accept losses) to meet the fleet's reduced carrying capacity. The units cannot be saved by aborting the mission even if the interception takes place in a port of embarkation or target hex.

29.5 {22:1:46, GG:46} Britain sails two interceptable missions from Portsmouth. May Germany choose to intercept them both in the Portsmouth hex, treating it as one naval battle?

A. Yes—in fact Germany may not choose otherwise *if she intercepts in the base hex*. The missions do not become separate until they enter separate hexes; similarly, two missions directed at the same target hex must be treated as one if intercepted in that hex.

29.5 {22:1:46} Two fleets on separate missions cross paths. May they both be intercepted as one interception at the crossing point?

A. If there is only one common hex where the mission cross paths, the defender may only intercept separately. One interception of one mission could be made in that crossing hex, the other elsewhere. If the missions have more than one hex in common, the defender may intercept both missions in any common hex and must treat it as one battle if he does.

29.5 {GG:46} Two fleets on separate missions cross paths. May they both be intercepted as one interception at the crossing point?

A. If there is only one common hex where the missions cross paths, the defender may only intercept separately. One interception of one mission could be made in that crossing hex, the other elsewhere. If the missions have more than one hex in common, the defender may intercept both missions in any common hex and must treat it as one battle if he does.

29.5 see [29.432](#) & [29.5](#)

29.6 SEA ESCORT:

29.61 During SR, in order for a land unit or BRP grant (or, in some circumstances, an air unit—see 16.5) to cross water, a 9-factor fleet must provide Sea Escort. (*EXCEPTIONS:* crossing arrows, American Initial Deployment into Britain.)

29.61 see [16.75](#) & [29.61](#)

29.62 Each 9-factor fleet may Sea Escort one unit counter of any size, or 20 BRPs. Lesser fleets may not perform Sea Escort. The unit or BRPs must be able to move to the escorting fleet's base by controlled land hexes.

EXAMPLE: A fleet based in Britain could not pick up a unit from Bergen and SR it. The fleet would itself have to be SRed to Bergen; on the following turn it could then SR the unit out. Alternatively, it could have changed base from Britain to Bergen during the Movement phase, and could then SR a unit out on the same turn.

29.63 Fleets used for Sea Escort may not be used for any other purpose during the game turn, although they could have changed base during the Movement phase.

29.64 Sea Escort fleets end the SR phase on the same base from which they began it. Fleets themselves may be moved to a new base, even a new front, by SR—but they may not during the same turn provide Sea Escort, not even for a unit going to the same destination.

29.65 Sea Escort fleets may not leave their front; however a chain of Sea Escort is possible. One fleet may escort a unit from an Atlantic Ocean port to Gibraltar where a Gibraltar-based fleet may then escort it onward in the Mediterranean. The reverse route is equally possible. The unit is counted only once against SR limits even though two fleets took part in its SR. Kiel and Istanbul may similarly serve as front-to-front transfer points.

29.65 see [29.421](#) & [29.65](#)

29.66 Hostile units in Cadiz or any other hex adjacent to Gibraltar do not

obstruct the SR/Sea Escort of units through, into, or out of Gibraltar. Naval units, whether performing Sea Escort or being themselves moved by SR, may not pass through the Turkish straits unless both sides of both crossing arrows there are under friendly (not neutral) control. In order to SR fleets from the North Sea to the Baltic or vice versa, either Kiel *or both* I32 and I33 must be under friendly control. Otherwise, hostile adjacent ground units do not bar sea passage except through Crossing Arrows, although they would prohibit the landing of such units in an adjacent hex.

29.66 {4ER, 18:5:19} Does a neutral Denmark qualify as being under "friendly control" for SR purposes?

A. No

29.66 {GG:46} Does a neutral Denmark qualify as being under "friendly control" for SR purposes?

A. No.

29.66 & 33.62 {GG:46} May British foreign aid still be sent to Finland if Copenhagen (I32) is Axis-controlled?

A. Yes, off the board via Petsamo in the extreme north of Finland.

29.67 The Sea Escort portion of any given SR must begin and end in controlled ports. *EXCEPTION:* Units may be SRed into or out of controlled islands *without* ports and not connected to another body of land by a crossing arrow, by a fleet based elsewhere on that front—provided that the "other end" of their cross-water portion of the SR does involve that fleet's base. (The exception does *not* apply to non-island areas without ports, such as Finland.)

29.7 PARTIAL NAVAL COUNTERS:

29.71 Unlike air units, naval units may not be voluntarily broken down into smaller units to perform separate tasks. Naval units are replaced by partial counters only when combat losses occur.

29.72 A fleet taking losses must reduce itself to the fewest possible partial counters.

EXAMPLE: A 9 factor fleet losing two factors must be replaced by a 6-factor and a 1-factor fleet, if available. A split into 4-, 2-, and 1-factor counters, or any other combination, would not be allowed unless 6- and/or 1-factor counters were not available.

29.73 If a player does not have partial naval counters available to "make the correct change" when he suffers naval losses, he must lose more factors than he otherwise would have.

29.74 Partial naval counters may be combined together when at the same base. A player with two 6-factor fleets could replace them with 9-, 2-, and 1-factor fleet counters.

29.75 Each partial counter is one unit for SR purposes. A player could combine two smaller partial counters into a larger one just before SR, if available partial counters permit.

29.8 CONSTRUCTION:

29.81 Unlike air, partial naval counters may *not* be constructed. A player may construct only 9-factor fleets at a cost of 27 BRPs.

29.82 A player may construct those 9-factor fleets shown as "Allowable Builds" in his Force Pool normally, but there are restrictions on construction which replaces combat losses: a nation must have nine factors of naval losses, and a 9-factor counter must have been returned to the Force Pool. Reconstructed combat losses are not placed on the mapboard until one full year after the BRP construction costs have been paid. Whenever reconstructing combat losses a player must name the port at which his rebuilt fleet will reappear one year hence. If that port falls to enemy control at any time during the ensuing year, that fleet and the BRPs spent for its purchase are lost.

EXAMPLE: A player pays 27 BRPs to reconstruct a lost fleet in his Spring 1940 Construction phase. The player places that fleet on the mapboard in his Spring 1941 Construction phase. Spring 1941 is the "turn of construction" for purposes of rule 29.34.

29.83 Turkey, Spain, Vichy France, Sweden, and the Free French may never rebuild fleets even if they should become active Minor Allies.

29.9 In any form of combat where naval factors are lost, a player may refuse to allow his opponent's losses and require opponent's naval counters to remain on the board. This does not affect the player's own losses. This unusual tactic is usually employed to prevent Allied attempts to deliberately "lose" the French fleet when the fall of France is imminent,

and thus avoid the possibility of the French navy falling into Axis hands.



30. REPLACEMENT COUNTERS—

30.1 Replacement counters represent training organizations feeding new levies into combat units. Their main function is to provide players with cheap units which they may choose to eliminate when subjected to Attrition combat. Russia, with an abundance of equally cheap 1-3 infantry, has no replacement counters.

30.2 Replacement counters, once placed, cannot move except by SR or when required to retreat by an opponent's Attrition hex selection.

30.3 Replacement counters have one combat factor and defend accordingly against enemy Offensive Option attacks. They may attack only as part of defender's counterattack when required during an enemy Offensive Option. They may not attack during their own side's Offensive Option, not even if adjacent to the enemy. They are not counted for Attrition if in contact with the enemy, and may *not* advance to occupy an Attrition-gained hex.



31. AIRBORNE—

31.1 To make an airdrop, an airborne unit must begin its turn on an air base able to trace a supply line, and not in enemy ZOC. (It may not move to an air base during Movement and then drop later in the turn, nor may it drop during a turn in which it is moved by Sea Transport or Invasion. If attacker at the start of his turn places an unused air base counter "under" an airborne unit, that does *not* constitute the unit beginning its turn on an air base.) It may drop during the Movement phase or immediately prior to ground combat resolution, or Exploitation combat resolution, during an Offensive Option. It may drop on any hex within six hexes of its air base, but, like air units, may not cross hexes containing any neutral land to do so.

31.1 {4ER, 18:5:19} May airborne units drop during the Exploitation Movement Phase even if there is no subsequent exploitation combat; even if no breakthrough has occurred and therefore there is no exploitation?
A. Yes; Yes [Compiler's note: despite the number, this question appears in the fourth-edition rules in the rightmost column, near the bottom.]

31.1 {GG:46} May airborne units drop during the Exploitation Movement Phase even if there is no subsequent exploitation combat; even if no breakthrough has occurred and therefore there is no exploitation?
A. Yes; yes.

31.1 {19:6:46, GG:46} Can an airborne unit take off from a city hex instead of an airbase counter?
A. Yes.

31.1 {GG:46} An airborne unit begins its player turn on a border airbase adjacent to a neutral armor unit. Its owner declares war on that neutral. May the airborne unit drop?
A. Yes. (It was not in hostile ZOC at the beginning of its turn.)

31.2 An airborne unit may drop on a hex containing enemy units. If it does so it *must* attack them and no other adjacent units, either alone or in conjunction with other attacking units. If not dropped on hostile units it *may* attack hostile units adjacent to its drop hex.

31.3 An airborne unit may not voluntarily move from the hex on which it drops, except by SR if possible, until the following game turn. If dropped, it may not advance after combat. It is automatically in supply on the game turn following its drop (*EXCEPTION*: 27.34, 35.3), but may not airdrop *unless* at the beginning of its turn it is able to trace a normal supply line to a source other than the hex on which it dropped the previous turn and meets the other drop requirements.

31.4 A dropped airborne unit which is eliminated before the end of the following *game* turn is removed from the game permanently and may not be reconstructed, *unless*, in that Combat phase it was: able to trace a normal supply line to a source other than the hex on which it was dropped; or adjacent to or stacked with a friendly ground unit (other than another recently dropped airborne unit or partisan). An airborne unit

which met the latter condition would not be permanently removed even if the friendly ground unit was eliminated in the same Combat phase or was itself unsupplied.

31.4 {GG:46} In the second player turn, an airborne unit drops on a hostile port where it could be supplied by sea. In the first player turn of the following game turn, it is attacked and eliminated. Is elimination permanent, because its owner has not yet had an opportunity to designate a supply fleet for the current game turn?

A. No, provided a supply fleet *is* designated during its owner's player turn.

31.5 Airborne units ignore all stacking limits and are never counted in determining the number of units in a stack. They may both attack and defend in situations where another unit would be "overstacked". This rule applies even if the airborne unit is moved and used like infantry. It does not apply to seaborne invasion combat if the airborne unit is embarked on a naval unit; only two embarked ground units may attack and this cannot be increased to three by using the airborne. It may, of course, join the invasion combat by dropping from an air base, if otherwise capable of doing so.

32. PARTISANS—

32.1 Partisans may not be constructed in any country until Russia is at war with Germany or Italy.

32.11 Partisans may be constructed and placed by any Allied player during his Construction phase. *EXCEPTIONS*: Only Russia may construct and place partisans in Russia. Partisans may not be placed in the same country two game turns in a row, even if a different major power constructs them.

32.12 Minor neutral 1-3 infantry units are used to represent partisans. The maximum number of partisan units allowed in each country is: Yugoslavia 4, Greece 3, Russia 3, France 2, Britain 3, Italy 1 (after Italian surrender). Partisans may not be placed in any unconquered country except Russia. Partisans may not be placed in any country other than the six specified above.

32.12 {19:6:46, GG:46} Could Italian partisans be created if Italy was conquered rather than having surrendered?
A. Yes.

32.13 Partisans must be placed on hexes that are vacant (or contain another partisan unit constructed by the same player), that are controlled by the Axis, but that are not in Axis ZOC. If no hexes in the country meet these criteria, partisans may not yet be placed there. Partisans may not be constructed in nor move into Vichy France (including Corsica) until it is activated as a German Minor Ally, is deactivated, or has had war declared on it by the Allies. Partisans may be placed in Ulster, Sicily, Sardinia or the Greek islands if desired.

32.14 Partisans are moved and controlled by the nation that constructed them and must conform to that nation's Option choices on their front (*EXCEPTION*: Partisans may always move, without regard to hex control and regardless of the Option in effect). If two Allied players each wish to construct partisans in the same country at the same time and cannot reach agreement, they split the maximum with the odd unit, if any, going to the nation with ground forces closest (as the crow flies) to the capital of the country in question. If equally close, roll a die.

EXAMPLE: Russia and Britain both want to construct partisans in Greece. The nation with ground units closest to Athens may construct two and gets first and third choice of placement within Greece. The other nation may construct one and gets second choice of placement.

32.15 Partisans are eliminated if the major power that constructed them is conquered.

32.16 Partisans in Russia count as Russian combat factors for purposes of Attrition resolution, Russian surrender (26.92), and Axis variant #7 (33.41).

32.2 Partisans cannot be moved by SR, cannot leave their country and cannot attack across its borders (CRT dictated counterattacks across a border are allowed), or move by sea. They would not be counted for Attrition if they were in contact with the enemy only across a national border. Russian partisans cannot be placed in, nor move into, East Europe. Partisans cannot receive Ground Support (unless major power ground units are involved in the same attack and the amount of such Ground Support is dependent on the number of major power ground factors involved) or DAS.

32.3 Partisans attack like normal infantry except that they cannot untriple a defender against a cross-river attack. *EXCEPTION:* If *all* units involved in a cross-river attack were partisans, then a partisan on defender's side of the river would untriple defender.

32.3 {19:6:46} If all units involved in a Crossing Arrow attack are partisan, then would a partisan on the defender's side of Crossing Arrow untriple the defender?

A. Yes.

32.3 {GG:46} If all units involved in a crossing arrow attack are partisan, then would a partisan on the defender's side of the arrow untriple the defender?

A. Yes.

32.4 Partisans may be counted in Attrition totals, may be taken as Attrition losses, and may advance to occupy an Attrition-gained hex so long as they don't advance out of their country.

32.5 Partisans are always in supply and never need to trace a supply line.

32.6 A partisan controls only the hex it is on, and that only temporarily; as soon as it moves away the hex automatically reverts to Axis control. A partisan-controlled hex is not controlled by its Allied creator: a partisan-controlled port could not receive Sea Transport nor SR; a partisan-controlled capital, although it deprives the Axis of BRPs, yields no BRPs to the Allies; and an objective hex controlled by partisans is not counted in the total of either side. A partisan unit can force Axis fleets and air units to change bases (28.15, 29.26), but only if it remains on the base hex at the end of Movement. Passing through a base is not sufficient. Allied naval and air factors cannot base in a partisan controlled hex.

32.6 see [15.4](#) & [32.6](#)

32.6 see [27.22](#) & [32.6](#)

32.7 If partisans control their country's capital and Axis counterattack fails, the BRPs are deducted from the controlling Axis nation provided it received them in the previous YSS (or in the 1942 and 1944 scenarios controlled the capital at the start of the scenario). (*EXCEPTION:* partisan control of Moscow never results in an Axis loss of more than 15 BRPs). Note that if an Axis counterattack on a partisans-controlled capital results in an Exchange which leaves no Axis ground unit able to advance after combat, the Axis nevertheless regain control of the capital because of rule 32.6 and do not suffer any BRP loss.

32.7 see [24.5](#) & [32.7](#)

32.8 If partisans control Moscow or Leningrad, the Axis lose 15 BRPs if they received BRPs for the city at YSS. Loss is immediate; recapture cannot prevent it.

32.8 {23:4:46} Is a 15-BRP loss for partisan-controlled Moscow imposed if the Axis received 15 BRPs during the year but not last YSS?

A. Yes.

32. {4ER, 18:5:19, GG:46} Do partisans stay in play after their country has been recaptured by the Allies?

A. Yes, but the provisions of 32.2 continue to apply.

32. {18:5:19} Can partisans stack and attack with friendly units?

A. Yes, with two exceptions: A Russian-constructed partisan may not stack with a Western Allied unit, and vice versa. The principle of rule 45.4 applies here.

32. {GG:46} Can partisans stack and attack with friendly units?

A. Yes, with two exceptions: a Russian-constructed partisan may not stack with a Western Allied unit, and vice versa. The principle of rule 45.4 applies here.



33. VARIANT COUNTERS—

33.1 Prior to beginning a game the British and German player each draw one of the ten numbered variant counters. Each player may, but need not, disclose the counter he has drawn to his Allies.

33.2 Some counters may be played at any time; others may be played only at a certain point or during a certain time frame. To play his counter, the player discloses it to all other players and the effects described below are followed.

33.3 If the counter drawn is not applicable to the scenario being played,

the player does not redraw. He may keep his opponents in doubt for the entire scenario by leaving his counter unplayed. If Britain or Germany is conquered before playing their variant, the controlling player may still play the variant if still applicable at any later point. In a multi-player game he must pass the unplayed variant to an ally.

33.4 EFFECTS OF VARIANT COUNTERS:

33.41 GERMAN DRAW:

1: Iraq becomes a German Minor Ally due to a successful pro-Axis coup there. The Iraqi rebel forces consist of five 1-3 infantry and one 2-4 air (use minor neutral counters) and draw supply from Mosul or any other controlled supply source. Mosul may not supply any other units. Iraq is conquered when Mosul is occupied by the Allies. See also 25.46. Play during any Axis player turn prior to 1943. Not applicable to 1944 scenario.

2: Axis aid to Irish resistance forces threatens British political interests. Britain must divert ten factors of ground and/or air units to Ulster and keep them there for one full year. The ten factors or their substitutes must be present at the end of each British Movement and SR phase. Units may be moved to Ulster by Sea Transport, SR/Sea Escort, or (air units) staging or may be constructed there. Play during any German turn; conditions must be met by end of following British turn or Britain signs a separate peace and withdraws from the game as a neutral. Britain is not considered conquered for purposes of 2.21. *EXCEPTIONS:* If part or all of Ireland is under Axis control, play of this counter has no effect. See also 33.63.

33.41, #2 {GG:46} With #2, Germany drops her airborne unit in Belfast, then plays the variant. Void or valid?

A. Void. "Ireland" in the exception should be taken as referring to the entire island, including Ulster. [Compiler's note: this rule question and the following one are listed in the Gamer's Guide under "33.21".]

33.41, #2 {GG:46} Revealing #2, Germany plays the variant, then enters Ireland on the second turn of a "flip-flop". Void or valid?

A. Still void. Britain must have a turn to meet the conditions before Axis entry.

33.41, #2 {GG:46} With #2, as British player, one sees some possible benefit from signing a separate peace and withdrawing as a neutral. What exactly happens when Britain does this?

A. British units remain on the board and British BRPs continue to be recorded and may be used to build units from the British force pool. Britain may not declare war on any major or minor power. The Axis may declare war again on Britain (for 35 BRPs); other Allied nations may not. Any minors controlled by Britain also turn neutral. Any British hexes under Axis-control remain so and vice versa. British units in hexes controlled by other Allies must be repositioned on the nearest British-controlled hex. While Britain is neutral, other Allied units may not enter British-controlled hexes and would have to be SRed out or destroyed if already present. British-constructed SW factors remain in existence but cause reduced losses (as in 10.24) in the next YSS, and none thereafter unless Britain is again at war. Britain may grant no more foreign aid while neutral, but that already granted remains fully effective.

33.41, #2 {GG:46} With regard to the above, then can Britain voluntarily "sign a separate peace" to obtain the above?

A. Not really. A truce is possible by diplomatic agreement and could have much the same effect. But there would be no restriction on British DoWs, no BRP cost to either side to resume hostilities, no change to SW procedures, no restrictions on other Allied units (unless the British player refused them passage!), no effect on minors, and no mandatory repositioning of units.

33.41, #2 & 39. {18:5:19} Can U.S./Britain declare war on Ireland? If they do conquer it, is the German variant counter #2 voided?

A. Yes; no. [Compiler's note: this is listed on 18:5:19 as "34.4 & 39."]

33.41, #2 & 39. {GG:47} Can US/Britain declare war on Ireland? If they do conquer it, is the German variant counter #2 voided?

A. Yes; no. [Compiler's note: this is listed in the Gamer's Guide as "34.3 & 39."]

3: Vichy France becomes a German Minor Ally. Play at the start of any Axis turn, but no earlier than the third game turn after the fall of France. Play at start of any Axis player turn in 1942 scenario. Not applicable to 1944 scenario.

4: Spain becomes an Italian Minor Ally providing France has been conquered, and Italy is still in the game, controls five objective hexes, and is at war with a major power. Italy must pay 35 BRPs for the Spanish DoW. Play only at start of Italian Spring 1941 turn. Not applicable to

1942 and 1944 scenarios.

5: Finland, Rumania, Bulgaria and Hungary become active German Minor Allies provided France has fallen and Germany is at war with Russia. Play at start of any German player turn in which the conditions have already been met. Not applicable to 1942 and 1944 scenarios.

6: Hitler does not cut back on armaments; Germany expands production. Add 50 BRPs to German total during 1942 YSS; play at that time. Play at beginning of 1942 scenario. Not applicable to 1944 scenario.

7: Turkey becomes a German Minor Ally providing Germany is at war with Russia and holds a combat factor advantage on the Eastern Front. All Axis combat factors are counted in determining whether the factor advantage exists, including Active Minor Allies and Italians (whether lent or not). Germany must pay 35 BRPs for the Turkish DoW. Play at start of any German turn that conditions can be met, prior to 1943. Not applicable to 1944 scenario.

33.41, #7. {19:6:46} Are Axis fleets in Kiel considered as being in the Eastern Front for the purpose of determining a combat factor advantage on the Eastern Front?

A. No.

33.41, #7 {GG:46} With #7, are Axis fleets in Kiel considered as being in the Eastern Front for the purpose of determining a combat factor advantage on the Eastern Front?

A. No.

33.41, #7. {19:6:46} May the German player activate Turkey with variant #7 if Germany lacks a full 35 BRPs for a DoW?

A. No—Germany cannot use Turkey's 30 BRPs to pay for the Turkish DoW. See Sequence of Play—II.D.1 & 2.

33.41, #7 {GG:46} With #7, may the German player activate Turkey with variant #7 if Germany lacks a full 35 BRPs for a DoW?

A. No—Germany cannot use Turkey's 30 BRPs to pay for the Turkish DoW. See Sequence of Play—II.D.1 & 2.

8: Submarine warfare very successful. If submarines in SW box outnumber ASW by 3-2, U.S. Initial Deployment to Britain is reduced to five units per turn for the remainder of the game. Play any time after 1941. When played, Germany must reveal her submarines in the SW box. The Allies, to avoid the effect of the counter, must reveal at least enough ASW to avoid the 3-2 ratio. They need not reveal all, nor any.

33.41, #8 {GG:46} With #8, if the Allies "avoid the effect of the counter", may the German hold it to play it again later?

A. No.

9: Mussolini encounters less Royalist opposition to armament program. Italy may add 25 BRPs to their total for current year only. Add two 2-5 armor and two 2-3 infantry units to Italian Force Pool. (These units must be constructed to be used; they are not added to the At Start forces.) Play during any Italian turn prior to 1942 or during opening setup. Not applicable to 1942 and 1944 scenarios.

33.41, #9 see [11.2](#) & [33.41, #9](#)

10: Hitler does not interfere with development of jet fighters and they are mass-produced earlier. Each two interceptors may be exchanged for three SAC factors (fractions resolved in favor of the German player) for the remainder of the game. German air units are also entitled to a +1 nationality DRM in any Air Combat (28.432) situation. Play during 1943 YSS for immediate resolution. In 1944 scenario, play during 1944 YSS. Effects apply during all subsequent YSS. Not applicable to 1939 scenario.

33.42 BRITISH DRAW:

1: Better French pre-war preparation. All replacement and infantry units in the French "Allowable Builds" must deploy during opening setup without paying any BRPs for unit construction. Play prior to French opening setup. Not applicable to 1942 and 1944 scenarios.

2: French economic boom; add 40 BRPs to French total for current year only. Play at any time prior to fall of France. Not applicable to 1942 and 1944 scenarios.

3: If France falls, all French colonies and units outside Europe and Corsica automatically become Free French. The French fleet also becomes Free French and fights under British control, and is not halved like other Vichy units (see the Vichy France rule). If the fleet is in a colony it remains there, otherwise it proceeds to the nearest British-controlled port. Free French naval, air, and armor units may never be

rebuilt once lost. Play upon the fall of France, but not before Fall, 1940. If France falls before Fall, 1940 the variant is void. Not applicable to 1942 and 1944 scenarios or if Britain has been conquered.

33.42, #3 {18:5:46} Erratum: delete "air and armor".

4: Increased commitments from the Dominions raise the British growth rate to 50%. Play at any time.

5: U.S. Navy makes full commitment to protect shipments to Britain from unrestricted submarine warfare. Allies lose only two BRPs (instead of three) for every surviving submarine factor in Strategic Warfare resolution for the remainder of the game. Play only in 1941 YSS for immediate resolution.

33.42, #5 {24:6:46} May British Variant #5 be played at the beginning of the 1942 and 1944 scenarios?

A. Yes.

6: America concentrates her Navy in the Atlantic. Fleets shown under "Allowable Builds" are placed in the "At Start" category instead, at no BRP cost. Two surplus 9-factor counters provided with game now become "Allowable Builds". The U.S. naval DRM (29.5712) is increased to +2. Play at time of American DoW, or at start of 1944 scenario.

7: Allied strategic bombing concentrates on German crucial industry. Each surviving SAC factor subtracts four BRPs from Germany instead of two for the remainder of the game. Play during 1944 YSS for immediate resolution. Not applicable to 1939 or 1942 scenarios. **Scenario**

33.42, #7 {GG:46} With #7, why should this variant not apply to the 1942 scenario? The 1944 YSS occurs during the 1942 scenario play.

A. Right—change to read "Not applicable to 1939 Scenario".

8: Higher shipping concentration in the Atlantic raises American Initial Deployment into Britain to seven units per turn. Play any time after 1942. Not applicable to 1939 scenario.

9: Successful Soviet Five Year Plan; add 50 BRPs to Soviet total for current year only. Play at start of any game turn.

10: Severely hard winter. Soviets get a free Offensive Option on Eastern Front. Axis units, except Finns, east of the original Russian border are not doubled (but are still tripled whenever applicable). Germany may not select an Offensive Option on the Eastern Front. Play at start of any Winter game turn. Effects apply for one game turn only.

33.5 INTELLIGENCE: During the Construction phase, any one major power per alliance may spend five BRPs to make a major intelligence effort. This expenditure entitles the spending player to roll two dice and consult the Intelligence Table. If two or more allies each wish to roll, both players roll a die and the one rolling the highest gets to make the Intelligence Table die roll (ties are resolved in favor of the player with the most BRPs). A still neutral Russia or Italy may use the Table but only if their future Allies do not wish to, or cannot; or if Russia or Italy wins the die roll just described. The US player may not use the Table prior to his entry into the game.

33.5 INTELLIGENCE TABLE

dice roll:	results:
12+	The opponent's variant counter is nullified if not yet played. It cannot be replaced.
11	The opponent's variant counter must be disclosed.
10	A nation of your choice loses an amount of foreign aid equal to (but not exceeding the amount of aid already given) the roll of a die in any one Minor Country of your choice.
9	You may draw one unused variant counter. This variant counter must be returned to the unused variant counter pile for a possible redraw by either side. The counter has no effect beyond its value as a clue regarding the possible identity of the opponent's variant.
8	Opponent must reveal the contents of his SW box.
7	Opponent must reveal the contents of his Murmansk box.
6,5	No Effect.
4	Your intelligence network has been compromised. Your side may not use the Intelligence Table next turn.
3	Same as dice roll "4" and the next Intelligence effort by your side will cost 10 BRPs.
2	Same as dice roll "4" and the next two Intelligence efforts by your side will cost 10 BRPs.

33.51 When a nation announces its intention to use this rule, any one major nation (except the US before entry into the game) wishing to oppose it may immediately spend 5 BRPs on Counterintelligence. This expenditure subtracts one from that specific Intelligence dice roll, but must be announced prior to that dice roll. Additional BRP expenditures never lower the Intelligence dice roll by more than one. A nation could not make this expenditure if it had already spent its BRP limit for the current game turn, or is closer than five to the limit. This is the only case in which a nation may spend BRPs during an opponent's turn.

33.51 {GG:46} "Additional BRP expenditures never lower the Intelligence dice roll by more than one." Does this imply that a player may make such expenditures just to waste unwanted BRPs (for example, to avoid a turn "flip-flop")?

A. No, no more than 5 counter-intelligence BRPs could be expended. Neither could two or more powers spend five BRPs each.

33.52 Every time a nation makes an Intelligence investment which is not matched by an opponent's Counterintelligence effort, that nation is entitled to a + 1 dice roll modification to the dice roll. This modification is not cumulative and therefore may be used only once per unmatched Intelligence investment.

33.53 The player using the Intelligence Table may elect to use the result of any lower number in lieu of the number he actually rolls.

33.54 All disclosures made as a result of the Intelligence Table are made only to the player actually using the table. He may elect to keep this information to himself or share it with his allies as he desires.

33.55 The player using the Intelligence Table need not specify who his opponent is until after making the dice roll. In a multi-player game it is possible that a player may want to use the Intelligence Table vs. an uncooperative ally or future ally which he doesn't trust.

33.55 {4ER, 18:5:19} If a "12" or higher is rolled on the Intelligence table can the player ask what the variant counter is, and once revealed can he elect not to have it nullified as a form of black mail against an uncooperative ally?

A. Yes, but once he has so elected, he can't change his mind.

33.55 {GG:46} If a "12" or higher is rolled on the Intelligence Table, can the player ask what the variant counter is and, once revealed, can he elect not to have it nullified as a form of blackmail against an uncooperative ally?

A. Yes, but once he has so elected, he can't change his mind.

33.5 {19:6:46} What happens on a modified dice roll of 1?

A. Treat it as a 2!

33.6 FOREIGN AID: Players may exert political pressure, diplomatic skills, and "gifts" or "foreign aid" to influence certain neutral minor countries to stay neutral or become active participants. This rule is applicable only to the 1939 and Campaign Game scenarios.

33.61 BRP grants to certain minor countries are possible in much the same manner that BRPs are transferred to major powers within the following guidelines:

GRANTING MAJOR POWERS				
	Germany	Britain	Russia	Italy
R	Finland	Finland*	—	—
E	Hungary	Hungary	Hungary	—
C	Rumania	Rumania	Rumania**	—
I	Bulgaria	Bulgaria	Bulgaria	—
P	Turkey	Turkey	—	—
I	Vichy France	Vichy France	—	—
E	Ireland*	Ireland	—	—
N	Spain	Spain	—	Spain
T	Iraq	Iraq	—	Iraq

**All such BRPs are forfeit if Russia controls Bessarabia.

33.61 {GG:46} If variants 11-20 are in use, can Yugoslavia receive Foreign Aid?

A. Yes, from any of the four "Granting Major Powers". [Compiler's notes: 1. See page 48 for details of variants 11-20. 2. This is listed in the Gamer's Guide under 33.41.]

33.61 {GG:47} Russia takes East Europe. After attacking Russia, Germany occupies the two Bessarabian cities. Rumania is still inactive. May Russia now give Foreign Aid to Rumania, assuming an SR path can be found?

A. No. If Russia controls a Bessarabian city at any time, the footnote to the 33.61 table applies permanently thereafter.

33.62 BRPs thus granted actually vanish since the recipient minors have no independent Force Pools or BRP levels of their own. Foreign Aid

grants cost SRs in the same manner as major-to-major BRP grants. One SR must be used for each grant to a different country. The total amount granted by one nation in one year cannot exceed 10% of its starting BRP total for that year. Controlled-hex routes and Sea Escort (when necessary) are required, but, for this purpose only, neutral hexes (even those of garrisoned inactive Axis Minor Allies containing a garrison unit) are treated as controlled. *Helsinki and Dublin, although not ports for any other purpose, may receive Sea Escorted BRPs under this rule but the Germans must use an additional SR for any grant to Dublin, and the British must use an additional SR for any grant to Helsinki. In this case, a BRP grant to Finland can be accomplished with just one Britain-based fleet for Sea Escort and two SRs. Otherwise, a Foreign Aid BRP grant to a minor costs only one SR even if it passes through more than one front via Sea Escort.

EXAMPLE: If Axis Minors are inactive, Britain may send BRPs to Hungary via Sea Escort-Greece-Bulgaria-Rumania.

33.62 {4ER, 18:5:19} Suppose Britain captures Norway and then Sweden thus acquiring a Baltic port; may foreign aid then be given to Finland at the normal SR rate?

A. Yes

33.62 {GG:47} Suppose Britain captures Norway and then Sweden, thus acquiring a Baltic port, may Foreign Aid then be given to Finland at the normal SR rate?

A. Yes.

33.62 {GG:47} When do Foreign Aid BRPs "vanish"?

A. Immediately upon granting, in the sense that they can no longer be used for unit construction, do not grow during YSS, cannot be transferred elsewhere, and so forth. They remain in the minor permanently, but their only possible use is to affect its activation die roll.

33.62 {GG:47} May British Foreign Aid pass through Russian-controlled hexes?

A. Not until Russia is at war with the Axis.

33.62 {GG:47} Does the 10% limit on Foreign Aid expenditures apply to a country's total before SW expenditures, or after?

A. Before.

33.62 {25:3:58} Britain grants foreign aid to Rumania by sending it around Africa to Suez; what is the SR cost?

A. Two.

33.62 see 29.66 & 33.62

33.63 Whenever a Minor Ally is due to activate, whether by variant counter or any other means, the activating major power player must roll a "1" or higher with one die. This die roll is subject to a modification of -1 for each BRP of Foreign Aid granted to that minor by the other side (including still neutral major powers destined to become an opponent) in excess of that granted to the minor by the activating major power. If neither side had granted BRPs to a given minor, it could be activated normally without a die roll. Germany is similarly prevented from playing variant 2 if Britain has spent at least six more BRPs on Ireland than has Germany. Foreign Aid from a power which has since been conquered or has attacked that minor is negated, but otherwise BRPs spent on foreign aid are cumulative and remain in effect after previously failed activation attempts.

33.63 & 46.3 {GG:47} If the Axis invades Spain, the Axis player must roll a "6" to activate the other Minor Allies. Can the Axis lower this by Foreign Aid?

A. Yes. [Compiler's note: an opposite answer is given at 46.3.]

33.64 Players must reveal the total amount of BRPs they spend on such grants during each Construction phase, as well as the specific countries the BRPs have been granted to.

33.64 {4ER, 18:5:19} Does one reveal the exact amount *each* recipient receives?

A. Yes

33.64 {GG:47} Does one reveal the exact amount *each* recipient receives?

A. Yes.

33.65 A player does not forfeit his variant counter or Minor Ally activation capability if he attempts to play it and fails because of adverse BRP grants; he may retain it and continue to attempt to play it on future turns. Axis variant 4, normally playable at only one specific time point, may be tried repeatedly when this rule prevents its play.

33.66 A power may not use Foreign Aid to activate a Minor Ally it is not

normally entitled to; it can only influence its activation by the normal controlling power. Foreign Aid modification determination die rolls are made whenever a minor is due to activate, whether by variant or other means, and Foreign Aid by itself can never affect this timing.

33.67 Activation attempts must occur at the beginning of the player turn—but after Initiative determination for that game turn.

33.6 {4ER, 18:5:19} After the US declares war is it allowed to give Foreign Aid to non-activated Minor Allies?

A. No

33.6 {GG:46} After the US declares war, is it allowed to give Foreign Aid to inactivate Axis Minor Allies?

A. No.

33.6 {18:5:19} If Rumania and/or Hungary have not been activated by the end of the game, do their objective hexes count toward the German total?

A. No—no more so than any uninvaded neutral's objective hex would count for either side. If an Axis Minor Ally is never activated it is neutral.

33.6 {GG:46} If Rumania and/or Hungary have not been activated by the end of the game, do their objective hexes count toward the German total?

A. No—no more so than any uninvaded neutral's objective hex would count for either side. If an Axis Minor Ally is never activated, it is neutral.

33.6 & 49.4 {4ER} Exactly what is the interrelationship between Foreign Aid and the Vichy Activation/Deactivation Table?

A. Germany and Britain may roll on the 49.42 table until Britain rolls a modified 1 or less, or Germany rolls a modified '6' or more. If Germany rolls a '6', play moves to the Foreign Aid die roll of 33.63. If that first roll fails, Germany may roll on subsequent turns at no cost (except for possible Foreign Aid) and does not have to roll on the 49.42 table again because Vichy France is already "activated" and is now awaiting only clearance of the Foreign Aid die roll restriction before becoming a full fledged German minor ally. Similarly, Britain may not roll on the 49.42 table as Vichy France is already due to activate. If Britain were to roll a modified '1' prior to Germany rolling a modified '6' on the 49.42 table, Vichy France is immediately deactivated at the end of the British construction phase without any Foreign Aid die rolls. An earlier discussion of this rule in Vol. 18, No. 2 of *THE GENERAL* was incorrect.

33.6 & 49.4 {GG:46} Exactly what is the interrelationship between Foreign Aid and the Vichy Activation/Deactivation Table?

A. The two rules call for two separate and distinct die rolls. First, either side may roll on the "Current Status" of Vichy France on the Activation/Deactivation Table; Foreign Aid is ignored at this point in the Vichy activation process. Once either side succeeds, the result is unchangeable and the table may no longer be used. If Germany succeeds, Vichy becomes "due to activate" and a second die roll is made during the next Axis player turn under 33.63, using any Foreign Aid modifiers applicable. There is no further cost to Germany for any of the 33.63 die rolls (other than additional Foreign Aid grants, if any).

33.7 TURKEY: In certain situations Turkey may become a British Minor Ally.

33.71 Britain may attempt to activate Turkey as a British Minor Ally at the start of its player turn if all of the following criteria are met:

33.711 Allied ground combat factors in the Mediterranean front exceed Axis ground combat factors in the front.

33.712 Allied naval factors based in Mediterranean ports exceed Axis naval factors so based. Italian ground and naval factors are counted as Axis whether yet actively allied with Germany or not.

33.713 The Allies control at least seven of the 14 Mediterranean front objective hexes.

33.714 Turkey is either neutral or has been attacked, but not yet conquered, by the Axis.

33.72 Britain must pay 35 BRPs on the turn of activation to activate Turkey barring a prior Axis DoW on Turkey (25.22) and immediately receives Turkey's BRPs.

33.73 All applicable Minor Ally (25) rules pertaining to Germany/Turkey apply equally to Britain/Turkey.

34. ANGLO—FRENCH COOPERATION—

There was much friction between the French and British early in the war. Therefore, the following special rules apply:

34.1 British units may not be in the Maginot line, Paris, Marseilles, nor the city of Vichy. They may pass through these hexes during Movement or SR, but may not pause in them at any point of a turn. If forced to retreat into such a prohibited hex they are eliminated.

34.1 {GG:47} May Britain land units in Marseilles by sea transport?

A. Yes, if they move out immediately after landing. Debarkation does not constitute a "pause".

34.1 & 34.2 {GG:47} Could French air units give ground support to a British counterattack on occupied London?

A. Yes. If based in France, they may operate freely from their bases. However, the 34.2 exception would *not* allow a French sea transport or invasion force to land in Britain.

34.2 French units may not enter Britain or British colonies (including Gibraltar). *EXCEPTIONS:* If a British colony has been occupied by the Axis, the French could then participate in reconquest attempts. See also 29.19.

34.2 {GG:47} May French air units fly missions over, or SR through, Britain and British colonies?

A. Yes.

34.2 see 34.1 & 34.2

34.3 British and French units may not stack together under any circumstances. Specifically;

34.31 British fleets may not carry nor Sea Escort French units.

34.32 British air units may give offensive Ground Support to French ground units (because the British air would be placed atop the attacked Axis units rather than atop the French) provided the attacked units are not in a hex prohibited by 34.1. They may not give DAS to the French, because they may not be atop the French units.

34.32 {GG:47} May British air units give ground support to French units and vice versa when making a seaborne invasion?

A. Yes, the land and sea portions are treated separately.

34.33 British armor may not Exploit a French breakthrough. (If British and French units on separate hexes attack the Breakthrough hex, then armor units of whichever nation occupies the Breakthrough hex may Exploit (even if that armor was adjacent only to participating attackers of the other nationality)—in this case there would be no Anglo-French combined stack.)

34.33 see 14.31 & 34.33

34.34 British air may base on a French air base (i.e. a French city) only if no French units are in the hex. The same applies to British naval units basing in French ports. British air may never base on a French air base counter nor may British fleets or ground units stack with a French air base counter.

34.35 In 34.31 through 34.34 the reverse is equally true: French fleets may not carry British units, etc.

34.36 British and French air units and fleets may not combine to perform any mission. Note one exception: if ground units on one hex were attacking Axis units on two or more hexes as one attack (14.23), British Ground Support could be flown over one of the attacked hexes and French Ground Support over the other.

34.36 {4ER, 18:5:19} If British fleets fail an interception die roll, can French fleets then try to make the interception (or vice versa)?

A. Not against that same enemy mission. All attempts must be announced before die rolls are made—if French and British both succeeded it would be illegal; therefore they can't both attempt. See also 29.57, last paragraph of the example.

34.36 {GG:47} If British fleets fail an interception die roll, can French fleets then try to make the interception (or vice versa)?

A. Not against that same enemy mission. All attempts must be announced before die rolls are made—if French and British both succeeded it would be illegal; therefore they can't both attempt the intercept. See also 29.57, last paragraph of the example.

34.37 Units may pass over each other freely during Movement, flight, etc.

34.38 French/British fleets may carry supply for each other's units.

34.3 {24:6:46} If France has a minor ally—say, Spain or Turkey—may British units stack with that minor's units before 1942?

A. No, and the reverse is equally true if Britain has a minor ally.

34.4 All of the foregoing restrictions (34.1 through 34.36) are lifted at the beginning of 1942. Commencing with the Allied player turn after the fall of France, 34.1 is ignored. Once a Maginot Line hex is occupied by Axis forces (5.51) British forces may enter it even prior to 1942 or the fall of France.

34.4 see [16.5](#) & [34.4](#)

34.5 There are never any restrictions on combined stacks of, or cooperation between, British/U.S. and Free French units.

35. AXIS FORCES IN AFRICA—

[Compiler's note: this section was extensively re-written in the Gamer's Guide. The deleted sections are shown in gray; the replacement sections are black.]

{GG:47} Rule 35 has been one of the thorniest and most-questioned since the 1981 rules revision. It has now been extensively rewritten; only sections 35.2 and 35.3 survive as they appear in the 3rd and 4th editions of the rulebook. Rule 35.1 and the rules 35.31 and subsequent are replaced by the following:

35.1 No more than 18 German combat factors of all types may be supplied from any Libyan source, or by sea through any North African port west of the Suez Canal, or in any combination thereof, so long as the Allies control Malta.

35.1 No more than 18 German combat factors (including air, naval, German Minor Allies, and activated Vichy French) may be supplied from any Libyan source, or through any ports or bridgeheads in Africa west of the Suez Canal, so long as the Allies control Malta. (EXC: A Casablanca bridgehead is not subject to this rule.)

35.2 Each Allied naval or air factor based at Malta reduces this 18 factor limit by one. Due to the restrictions on Allied basing in Malta, the limit can never fall below four.

35.3 German units already in North Africa may not be eliminated by an increase in Allied strength on Malta, but only that amount of factors within the current limit is in supply and allowed to move during the Movement and/or Combat phase. An armor unit that has just Exploited or an airborne that has just dropped is *not* exempted from this limit by its automatically-in-supply status.

35.31 The German player determines which units are to be considered unsupplied. Once he makes that decision, however, he may not change it until the start of his next player turn, even if the units designated as supplied are subsequently eliminated or removed from the affected area.

35.31 The German player designates which units are to be unsupplied; this is done when normal 27.44 supply determinations are made. The designations may not be altered until the same point of the next Axis player turn, even if supplied or unsupplied units are subsequently eliminated or removed from the area. Air and naval units designated as unsupplied are inverted, and remain so until the next Axis turn.

35.32 Unsupplied units may be counted in Attrition totals. Units unsupplied due solely to this rule are not eliminated at the end of their turn and can be SRed.

35.32 Unsupplied units are counted in attrition totals. Ground units unsupplied under Rule 35 but supplied under rules 27.23 and/or 27.24 are not eliminated at the end of their turn and may be SRed.

35.4 Italian units (whether lent to Germany or not) and Spanish units never count toward the limit. German Minor Ally units, including activated Vichy French, do count towards the limit, even if they are in a Vichy colony when activated and remain there.

35.4 Italian units (even if lent) and Italian Minor Allies are never counted toward the limit. Activated Vichy French units count only if they cannot trace a ground supply line to a Vichy supply source in Tunis or Beirut.

35.4 see [27.12](#) & [35.4](#) & [35.5](#)

35.5 A sea supply route through one or more of the following ports: Antioch, Beirut, Haifa, and Port Said, would also be limited to a maximum of 18 factors and this limit would include Italian and Spanish units as well. The 18 factor limits do not apply to factors which can trace an overland supply route to any non-Libyan port source (i.e. through Turkey or Persia to some source of supply). The Allies can decrease this maximum limit in a similar manner to which Malta acts on Libyan supply sources if they have an air unit on Cyprus, Crete or Rhodes or more naval factors stationed in the Mediterranean east of the Suez Canal than the

Axis. Should the above situation arise the amount of supply the German could draw through one or more of the above ports is limited to the 18 factor limit minus one factor for each Allied air factor on Cyprus, Crete or Rhodes or within four hexes of the Axis port, and minus one factor for each Allied naval factor stationed east of the Suez Canal. Note that if the Allies stationed two 9-factor fleets in the Mediterranean east of Suez Canal no Axis units could be "supplied" through the port. *NOTE:* Axis units are never automatically in supply solely because they are within the limits of this rule. Supply must still be provided by Axis fleets to the respective ports.

35.5 Axis forces in the Eastern Mediterranean which draw supply through Antioch, Beirut, Haifa, Port Said or any of the three Eastern Mediterranean beaches are also limited to 18 combat factors of all types. The limit applies to all Axis units *except* Vichy French tracing ground supply to Tunis or Beirut. It does not apply to units able to trace a normal supply line through Turkey or Iraq.

35.51 The Eastern Mediterranean limit may be reduced by the Allies in a manner similar to that of 35.2. (There is no minimum of four; it is possible for the limit to fall to zero.) Each Allied air factor (even if inverted) on Cyprus, Crete, Rhodes or within four hexes of all Axis ports or bridgeheads in the area reduces the Axis limit by one factor. Each Allied naval factor based in the four ports (Antioch, Beirut, Haifa, Port Said) reduces the limit by one factor. However, Axis naval factors based in any of the four ports may offset the Allied naval factors: they are subtracted from the Allied naval factors and only those Allied factors in excess of the Axis ones serve to reduce the limit. Inverted naval units of both sides are included in this determination.

35.52 Axis ground units are never automatically in supply because they are within the limits of Rule 35.5; Axis fleets must still supply the appropriate ports or bridgeheads per rules 27.23/27.24.

35.53 All provisions of Rules 35.3, 35.31 and 35.32 apply equally to the 35.5 area.

35.5 {4ER, 18:5:46} Isn't it possible to trace supply to a Libyan source from east of the Suez?

A. Yes—but such supply capacity is limited by 35.1 and 35.2.

35.5 {4ER, 18:5:46} Are Axis naval factors stationed at the four (east of Suez) ports counted against the 18 factor limit on Axis combat factors supplied through those ports?

A. Yes—although naval and air units do not require supply in the conventional sense, the 18 factor limits of rule 35 apply to combat factors of *all types* (see 35.1).

35.5 {4ER, 18:5:46} Would this supply limitation apply to bridgeheads also?

A. Yes, the Axis can supply a maximum of 18 factors by sea in this part of the Med. 35.1 also applies to any Axis bridgehead counters in Libya, Tunisia, or Algeria. 35.5 applies to any Axis bridgehead counters in Egypt, Palestine, or Syria.

35.5 see [27.12](#) & [35.4](#) & [35.5](#)

35.6 All Allied and Axis naval and air factors involved in these supply determinations are simultaneously capable of normal functions.

35.6 All non-inverted Allied and Axis air and naval factors involved in these supply determinations are fully capable of performing normal functions.

35.7 German units in excess of their current supply capabilities as detailed in 35.1 and 35.5 may not be moved into Africa or the area east of Suez by any means.

35.7 Axis units in excess of the current supply capability may not enter either area by any means except as noted below:

35.71 If the Axis players have no units in the area in question, they may enter it by seaborne invasion and/or paradrop.

35.72 Axis units moving overland (as from Turkey into Syria) are of course under no restrictions. However, if an Allied counterthrust should cut off any part of the axis force, any portion dependent on sea supply would become subject to the provisions of Rule 35.5.

35.73 Axis units moving from Libya across the Suez Canal would be subject to the Libyan limits. Once Port Said or any of the other four ports are captured, they could supply part of this force under the provisions of Rule 35.5.

35.74 Naval units may move or SR into the four eastern ports if their presence will "offset" enough Allied naval factors under the provisions of

Rule 35.51 to make room for the factor increase in the area. Note that naval factors could change base during the Movement Phase, offset Allied naval factors, then be inverted—and thus allow both the movement of units already in the area (35.31) and perhaps also the later SR of additional units.

36. GERMAN-ITALIAN COOPERATION—

36.1 Until Germany and Italy are allied (both at war against the same major power) their units may not enter each other's controlled territory, and naval units may not embark the other's units. Once actively allied, German and Italian units may always stack together.

36.1 see [21.4](#) & [36.1](#)

36.1 see [27.11](#) & [36.1](#)

36.2 LENT ITALIAN FORCES:

36.21 As soon as Germany and Italy are allied, Italian units may be lent to Germany during SR phases. The total under German control at any one time may not exceed ten factors. Air base counters may not be lent.

36.22 Each unit so lent counts as one SR (which may be charged against either nation's SR limit) on the turn in which it is transferred whether it is or is not moved on the mapboard. A unit may be lent (or reclaimed) even if isolated or adjacent to the enemy, but it could not also be SRed. A lent unit must meet the usual criteria for SR (16.2-16.5).

36.22 see [16.1](#) & [36.22](#)

36.23 The German player controls lent units as if they were his own, paying for Offensive Options in which they participate. If lost in combat they return to the Italian Force Pool; the Italian player must pay their BRP cost if reconstructed; they are then again under Italian control until again transferred during a SR phase. Hexes gained by lent units are controlled by Germany, not Italy.

36.23 {4ER, 18:5:46} Do lent Italian units count against the 20 factor garrison limit of 25.6?

A. Yes—lent units could not be placed in an area above & beyond the 20 factor garrison limit.

36.23 {19:6:46} Other than during transfer (when being lent or reclaimed), are SRing lent Italian forces counted against German, or Italian, or either's SR limits?

A. German.

36.23 {GG:47} Other than during transfer (when being lent or reclaimed), are SRing lent Italian forces counted against the SR limit of Germany, Italy, or either at Axis option?

A. Germany.

36.23 {GG:47} May lent Italian units be used as part of Germany's 20-factor East Front garrison? May they be in the Murmansk box?

A. No. No.

36.23 see [21.4](#) & [36.23](#)

36.24 Italy may reclaim her units during any Axis SR phase, each unit again costing one SR. (Italy could reclaim her units without German concurrence—but might find she gained little since she could not SR or move them over German-controlled hexes without German permission.) If Italy is conquered, lent units are removed from play immediately.

36.25 If Germany is conquered, lent Italian units remain in play and revert to Italian control. There is no SR cost for the reversion, although there is SR cost if and when Italy moves the units by SR. Note that because of 26.5 such reverted units may often be in a difficult situation, unable to move by SR and/or to remain in supply.

37. GIBRALTAR—

37.1 Loss of Gibraltar costs Britain 25 BRPs immediately. The British do not get one turn to try to recapture it. If the British have previously suffered a 25 BRP loss for Gibraltar, they do not again lose 25 BRPs for losing Gibraltar a second time. Should this result in a BRP deficit, Britain may make no further BRP expenditures during that year and the deficit would be subtracted from the next YSS as per 10.32.

37.2 The side (and only that side) that *controls* Gibraltar may SR units (by Sea Escort) into, out of, or through Gibraltar, regardless of the presence of enemy units on any adjacent hex. The converse is not true; units may not SR into/out of hex Z8 if hostile units are in Gibraltar. See also 27.26, 29.14 and 29.65.

37.3 If the Allies lose Gibraltar, the supply capacity of the Egyptian ports becomes restricted. They may supply only four ground units. Allied air and naval presence in the Mediterranean is limited to a maximum of four counters. Partial air/naval counters count one each even if stacked together. Free French units do not count against the limit, but all other Allied units do. In rare cases units in excess of the limit might be able to trace supply from a source outside the Mediterranean Front **from non-Egyptian port sources**—units in Spain via a Spanish port/sea supply line to Britain, for example. Otherwise, units in excess of the limit must leave the Mediterranean front by the end of their next player turn or be eliminated. SRs from Egypt via the Suez Canal, off the board around South Africa and back on the board in the Atlantic are allowed—but each unit counter thus moved counts as two SRs against SR limits. The reverse route is also allowed at double SR cost even if Gibraltar remains in Allied hands. Two fleets may be needed if the escorted unit is to move on into the Mediterranean by sea from Suez (in this case Suez acts as a sort of two front port); a Suez-based fleet must provide the Mediterranean portion of the Sea Escort. Sea Escort is required for any non-naval unit thus SRed, but is not doubled unless the unit moves to and away from Suez in the same SR.

37.3 {GG:47} Could either side carry supply to Suez in excess of 37.3 limits by using double supply fleets (27.23) in the same manner as double SR?

A. No. Furthermore the Axis could not even supply the four units allowed the Allies by 37.3.

37.3 {23:4:46} Does this rule apply when non-Egyptian port sources on the Mediterranean Front are controlled by the Allies?

A. No, it restricts only the Egyptian ports. The seventh line would read better as "...from non-Egyptian port sources." [Compiler's note: I suspect that it should read "non-Egyptian-port sources"; that is, sources that are not Egyptian ports, instead of port sources that are not Egyptian.]

37.3 {23:4:46} The Axis control Gibraltar but the Allies control Madrid. The Allies have based a supply fleet in a Spanish port, enabling more than four ground units to remain in supply. What about Allied air/naval units in excess of four in the Mediterranean?

A. They are fully operational. As long as the Allies can trace a supply line, with or without supply fleets, to a non-Egyptian port source, the limit of four air/naval counters is not in effect? [Compiler's note: (as above)]

37.3 see [27.24](#) & [37.3](#)

37.3 see [27.26](#) & [37.3](#)

37.3 & **41.3** {19:6:46} Do allied units based in Malta count against Egyptian supply limitations?

A. Yes.

37.3 & **41.3** {GG:47} Do Allied units based in Malta count against Egyptian supply limitations?

A. Yes.

37.4 Gibraltar, as a two front port, may be invaded by both Mediterranean and Western Front fleets (requiring an Offensive Option only in the Mediterranean, 20.1), but only if a 9-factor fleet is not present in Gibraltar.

37.4 {25:3:58} May Gibraltar be invaded by fleets based on the Western front?

A. Yes.

38. IRAQ—

Iraq is a British colony, even though it may become a German Minor Ally by play of the Iraqi revolt variant counter. BRP transfers may not pass through Iraq. See also 25.46 and 33.41-1.

39. IRELAND—

Northern Ireland (Ulster) is treated as an integral part of Great Britain for all purposes. The remainder of Ireland is a neutral minor country.

39. see [33.41](#), #2 & [39.](#)

40. LEND-LEASE—

40.1 Lend-Lease is a method of sending BRPs from the West to Russia via Persia in addition to or in place of the Murmansk route.

40.2 In order to activate the route, a Western Allied nation must pay 25 BRPs during its Unit Construction Phase. This represents the cost of opening and improving the transportation facilities through Persia and the exertion of political pressure. Allied units may, but need not, enter

Persia; the Allied action places all Persian hexes under Allied control. Russian units may enter Persia only with the concurrence of the nation which paid the BRP charge. The Axis need not pay a DoW cost if they subsequently enter Persia.

40.2 {4ER, 18:5:46} Does it still cost the Western Allies 25 BRPs to open the Lend-Lease route if either Russia or a Western Allied nation has conquered Persia?

A. Yes

40.3 Lend-Lease BRPs require two turns to reach their destination. During SR (beginning in the same turn in which they activate the route) the Allies may SR BRPs to the Lend-Lease box on the mapboard, providing U.S. or British based Sea Escort, as appropriate. On the following turn's SR Phase, the BRPs may move on to Russia—no Sea Escort is required, but the BRP movement must be charged against the SR limits of whichever nation moved the BRPs to the Lend-Lease box. Should the surrender of Russia or other game developments cause the Allies to change their mind, BRPs in transit can be returned to the lender from the Lend-Lease box, by reversing the process. Once SRed, BRPs do not exist on any BRP Inventory Track until actually delivered; they are not subject to growth or reduction during a YSS while in the Lend-Lease box. BRPs in the Lend-Lease box count as part of the lender's total BRPs when determining initiative. BRPs may remain in the Lend-Lease box indefinitely, but no more than 20 may accumulate there.

40.3 {4ER, 18:5:46, GG:47} How many BRPs may be given to Russia via Lend Lease in one turn?

A. 20

40.4 The Axis may cut the Lend-Lease route by capturing both Tabriz and Sarab, *or* Grozny, Astrakhan, and Krasnovodsk. The Allies reopen the route (without any additional BRP expenditure) if they recapture any one city, provided they then control at least one city of each group. Any BRPs in transit at the time of Axis capture may remain where they are (awaiting possible Allied recapture) or may be returned to the west during an Allied SR phase.

40.5 If the Allies control Turkey, or part of it, and can trace a land route from a Mediterranean port to the current Russian supply source thereby, they may use it for Lend-Lease without paying any activation cost. Such route may not pass through Iraq, and BRP transfers require the same two-turn process as the Persian route. Two Sea Escort fleets (one in U.S./Britain, one in Gibraltar) are required for the first turn; none for the second. The Axis may cut such a route either by actually interposing their forces/ZOCs outside Russia, or by capturing Grozny and Astrakhan. The BRPs are considered to have reached the Mediterranean port at the end of the first turn. They are destroyed if the Axis occupy this port before they move onward; they may not move to Russia if the Axis block the intended route.

40.6 Lend-Lease activation costs may not be paid prior to a state of war existing between Russia and Germany.

40.7 If the nation which paid the 25 BRPs to activate the Lend-Lease route is subsequently conquered, the route is closed until another Western Allied nation pays another 25 BRPs to open it again.

40. {GG:47} The Axis declare war on Persia before the Lend Lease route is opened. The Allies subsequently drive the Axis out and wish to open the route. Does this action still cost the full 25 BRPs?

A. Yes. This is also true if the Allies should declare war on and enter Persia before the route is open.

41. MALTA—

41.1 Malta may not base more than nine naval and five air factors. Naval and air units in Malta inhibit German forces in Africa; see rule 35.

41.2 Air units in Malta may, at their option, decline Counterair combat. Should they so decline, attacking air units are free to attack any naval units in Malta, ignoring defender's air; moreover, the declining Malta unit would be barred from flying any air missions for the remainder of the game turn.

41.3 If Britain loses both Suez/Alexandria and Gibraltar, Malta ceases to be even a limited supply source (*see* 27.13).

41.3 *see* [37.3](#) & [41.3](#)

42. MURMANSK—

42.1 The Western Allies may send BRPs to Russia by means of

Murmansk convoys. This method is not subject to the two-turn delay of the Lend-Lease route, but may be subjected to Axis opposition.

42.1 {25:3:58} May the Allies SR ground and air units to Russia via Murmansk?

A. No, Murmansk and Lend-Lease routes may be used to only send BRPs?

42.2 The granting Allied nation(s) assigns BRPs (no more than 40) to a Murmansk convoy during its Construction phase, then assigns Sea Escort fleets (one for each 20 BRPs) during SR. Additional fleets above the minimum required for Sea Escort may be assigned for convoy protection if desired; each fleet so assigned counts as an additional SR. The actual Sea Escort fleets must be based in the U.S. and/or Britain as appropriate depending on the source of the BRPs; but additional convoy protection fleets could be based anywhere on the Western Front. These additional convoy protection fleets are themselves considered to be performing Sea Escort and may perform no other functions during the game turn. The Allies may also transfer ASW factors from the SW box to the Murmansk box for convoy protection; such transfers are not charged against SR's, but the counters so moved must remain in the Murmansk box at least until their next Spring turn SR phase.

42.2 *see* [29.25](#) & [42.2](#)

42.3 If no Axis units are in the Murmansk box, the convoy is unopposed and 100% of the BRPs convoyed are added to the Russian total.

42.4 The Axis may oppose Murmansk convoys only if they already have units in the Murmansk box. They may place air and fleet units in the Murmansk box only if they control Bergen. Control of Bergen is not necessary for the placement of submarine counters in the Murmansk box, however, if Bergen is not controlled by the Germans each submarine factor eliminates one less BRP from the convoy than would normally be the case.

42.41 The Germans may move naval and air units already in Norway to the Murmansk box and vice versa during any German *Movement* phase. A unit elsewhere could not stage or change base to Norway then move to the Murmansk box later in its turn. The German may also move submarine counters from the SW box to the Murmansk box on any *Movement* phase, but subs may move from Murmansk back to the SW box only in a Spring turn *Movement* phase prior to the 1945 YSS. German movement to and from the Murmansk box cannot be intercepted, and may take place regardless of the Option chosen. Italian and Axis Minor Ally forces are never allowed in the Murmansk box.

42.41 {19:6:46} May *lent* Italian forces be placed in the Murmansk box?

A. No.

42.42 Axis fleet strength opposing the convoy is compared to Allied fleet strength. (The latter includes the units Sea Escorting the BRPs as well as any extra convoy protection fleets.) If the Axis-to-Allied naval ratio is less than 1-3, nothing happens. For 1-3 and higher ratios a die roll is made; results are as follows:

1-3: On die roll of '1', Axis fleets *feint sortie*—convoy scatters and loses an extra BRP for each factor of submarine and air attacks.

1-2: On die rolls '1', or '2' Axis fleets *sortie*, drawing Allied reaction. Convoy scatters and automatically loses 10% of its BRPs (fractions rounded down) plus an extra BRP for each factor of submarine and air attacks.

1-1: On die rolls '1', '2' and '3' Axis fleets *sortie*. Convoy scatters and loses 20% of its BRPs plus an extra BRP for each factor of submarine and air attacks.

3-2: On die rolls of '1' through '4' Axis fleets *sortie*. Convoy scatters and loses 30% of its BRPs plus an extra BRP for each factor of submarine and air attacks.

Any ratio greater than 3-2 is treated as 3-2. These losses from surface naval opposition are determined first before any further BRP deductions are made for successful air or submarine opposition. If the Axis fleets *sortie*, both sides roll a die to determine if a naval battle will occur. The player rolling the higher number may decide whether to join battle or not (Axis player wins ties). If battle is joined, naval losses are extracted in the normal manner (29.571). Regardless of naval losses suffered (if any), the percentage convoy BRP loss is not affected.

42.43 For each air factor in the Murmansk box a die is rolled with the resulting number indicating the BRPs lost from the convoy. (There is a +1 die roll modifier if the convoy scatters and a -1 die roll modifier for

every excess 9-factor fleet beyond those needed to transport the BRPs if the convoy does not scatter. After each air factor attacks another die is rolled to see if the air factor survives. The air factor survives on any die roll less than "6". There is a +1 die roll modifier for every accompanying 9-factor fleet providing protection (i.e. not needed for transport of BRPs) if the convoy does not scatter.

42.44 For each submarine factor in excess of escorting ASW factors, 3 BRPs are lost from the convoy (4 BRPs if convoy scatters). Submarine and ASW counters are mutually eliminated as in SW resolution in whatever ratio was in force during the YSS of the current year (10.21).

42.5 BRPs surviving German opposition are added to the Russian total.

42.6 After resolution, all German surface and air units remain in the Murmansk box until moved out during the Movement phase of a subsequent Axis turn. Allied surface units return to their bases immediately. Surviving Allied ASW or German submarines remain in the Murmansk box; they may not move back to the SW box before the next Spring turn.

42.6 {GG:47} Assume the Allies have the initiative in Spring 1944. Could Germany place all of her 1944 YSS U-boat builds in the Murmansk box to oppose a Spring Murmansk convoy, and then return them to the SW box in her own Spring turn—thus pulling double duty?
A. No. The rule states U-boat transfers to the SW box must be made in the next Spring turn. If used in the Spring turn—or even if they sat in the Murmansk box unused—they couldn't be transferred until the 1945 Spring turn. Double use of U-boats and ASW in this manner is never allowed.

42.7 German units withdrawn from the Murmansk box must reappear at Bergen (air/naval), Oslo or an air base counter in Norway (air only), or the SW box (submarines only). *EXCEPTION:* If Allied conquest of Norway traps German air or naval units in the Murmansk box, they must be moved to Germany itself during the next Axis Movement phase, and may not oppose Allied convoys in the interim. If Bergen, but not Oslo, is Allied-controlled, surface fleets must be withdrawn but air units need not be and may continue to oppose convoys. Submarines remain in Murmansk until the next Axis Spring turn, or may continue to oppose Murmansk convoys, albeit at reduced effectiveness (42.4).

42.8 German forces in the Murmansk box should be kept inverted until used. The German may leave units physically in Norway and/or the SW box while keeping a secret record of which of these units are actually in the Murmansk box; the Allies may do the same with ASW counters. If, while using this method, the Allies wish to invade Bergen, they must take an Offensive Option and send an invasion fleet to find out what's there—only then do they learn if a 9-factor fleet is present in Bergen to prohibit the invasion. Whichever method is used, the Germans need not reveal all their Murmansk force in response to an Allied convoy, but only as much as they desire to commit to action against the convoy. The Allies need not reveal their ASW strength until after the German player has committed his submarines.

42.9 The Murmansk convoy route is closed if the Axis have both Leningrad and Vologda controlled or isolated. The two cities are not isolated if they can trace a supply line free of enemy ZOC to the east edge of the map or to Moscow. Supply traced from any other source, such as a Russian controlled Helsinki, does not break this isolation, for purposes of this rule only.

43. POLAND/EAST EUROPE—

43.1 The Campaign Game/1939 scenario begins with Germany at war with France, Britain, and Poland; none of the major powers pay DoW costs unless they declare war on additional countries. Germany *must* begin with an Offensive Option on the Eastern Front (this Option is free, Germany does not pay 15 BRPs for it) and must make at least one ground attack on Polish ground units. Germany must continue to attack Polish forces on subsequent turns, with either Offensive or Attrition Option combats, until Poland is conquered.

43.2 Germany must, on opening setup, place at least 20 ground and/or air combat factors on the Eastern Front. She must continue to maintain 20 factors there until Russia and Germany are at war. For opening setup *only*, units on the Western Front but adjacent to the Polish border may be counted as part of the 20 factors. Thereafter, at the end of each German Movement phase *and* German player turn, Germany must have 20 factors physically located on Eastern Front hexes. Losses to this force incurred during an opponent's turn do not cause Germany to default this requirement, provided at least 20 factors are in this area after the next

German Movement Phase. Failure to comply with this requirement releases the Russian player from the ban on a DoW (21.54) vs Germany or any of her garrisoned Minor Allies prior to Fall, 1941. Italian and Minor Allied units do not count nor do units in Rumania or Turkey. Air units comprising part of the 20 factors may conduct missions from their Eastern Front bases. It is permissible for Germany to move units into the Eastern Front thereby releasing other units to leave the East during the same Movement (or SR) phase.

43.2 {4ER, 18:5:46} May a German unit attack or attrition across a neutral border as in the case of a German garrison unit in Rumania attacking Russia while Rumania is still inactive?

A. Yes, but such action would be limited to German garrison units which, in turn, are limited to 20 factors on the Eastern Front. See also the last sentence of 25.6.

43.2 {GG:47} May a German unit attack or attrition across a neutral border as in the case of a German garrison unit in Rumania attacking Russia while Rumania is still inactive?

A. Yes. See also the last sentence of 25.6.

43.2 {4ER, 18:5:46, GG:47} Must the 20 "factors" maintained on the Eastern Front be composed entirely of ground and/or air units?

A. Yes

43.2 {GG:47} Germany is found lacking the 20-factor requirement but Russia does not declare war at her first opportunity. Germany then meets the 20-factor requirement again. May Russia still declare war?

A. Yes. Any breach of the 20-factor requirement lifts the ban permanently.

43.2 {GG:47} May Germany choose to accept the risk of a Russian DoW and place less than 20 factors in the East on opening setup?

A. No.

43.3 The dotted red line running north-south in Poland is the partition line agreed to in the Nazi-Soviet pact of August 1939. German units may cross this line in their attack on Poland, but may not remain there at the end of their turn without jeopardizing their non-aggression pact with Russia. If a German unit remains east of the partition line at the end of its player turn, the Russian player may make a DoW on Germany prior to Fall, 1941 (21.54). If the German player is unable to move units back across the partition line by advance after combat or SR he may choose to eliminate the unit rather than violate the non-aggression pact.

43.3 {GG:47} Germany violates the Pact by leaving units in East Poland in the Fall '39. Russia chooses not to make a DoW on Germany immediately, but instead responds with a DoW on East Europe. There are several gray areas ... ?

A. Russia can enter East Poland as well as the rest of East Europe, but may not enter German-controlled hexes in doing so. (In East Poland, Germany controls only those hexes she has entered per rule 7.1; others are uncontrolled.) Russia cannot attack German units, but may move adjacent to them and may ignore their ZOCs. Since neither 43.41 nor 43.5 applies, neither player will get the 25 BRPs until one side or the other controls all East European cities.

43.3 & 43.41 {GG:47} If Russia and Germany go to war, what is the status of Polish forces if they are still on the board? [Compiler's note: This question is listed in the Gamer's Guide under 43.3 & 43.31, but there is no rule 43.31.]

A. Polish and Russian forces are friendly to each other, but rule 45—Russo-Allied Cooperation—applies. The British player still controls the Poles per 22.1. Poland must conform to Russian option selections, but may join in Russian offensive options without BRP costs to Britain.

43.4 On the Russian Fall 1939 turn or thereafter, Russia may declare war on and occupy East Europe. East Europe is comprised of the Baltic States, Poland east of the partition line and Bessarabia (Rumania east of the Eastern Front boundary). Russia must pay 10 BRPs to declare war on all of East Europe. Unlike the Germans, Russian units may not move across the Polish partition line unless at war with Germany. Russia need only occupy the three Eastern Polish cities to satisfy the Polish portion of her East Europe conquest requirements—even if Poland remains unconquered. If not at war but both powers are operating against Poland, German and Russian units may ignore each other's ZOCs but may not move over each other. They may not enter a vacant hex controlled by the other, and may trace supply only through hexes under their own control. Once Germany has withdrawn across the partition line, hex control is automatically determined by the partition line. The Eastern Front boundary becomes the new Rumanian border after Russian occupation of East Europe.

43.41 Should Germany declare war on Russia before Russia declares war

on East Europe, the following special considerations apply.

43.411 Russia may enter any part of Poland without declaring war on East Europe.

43.412 Neither Russia nor Germany may enter the Baltic States until one or the other spends 10 BRPs to declare war on that area.

43.413 Bessarabia remains part of Rumania. Since the Russo-German pact is broken, Russia may not enter this area without a separate DoW on Rumania. Otherwise, 25.6 governs Russian actions.

43.41 {GG:47} Does this rule apply if Russia legally declares war on Germany (for example, due to German violation of 43.3)?

A. Yes.

43.41 see [43.3](#) & [43.41](#)

43.4 {GG:47} Poland survives the first Axis turn and Russia enters East Europe on an Attrition Option. Must Russia make an attrition die roll against Poland?

A. Only if adjacent to a Polish unit which is east of the Partition Line.

43.5 In order to control East Europe, Russia must control every city in the area. Should Russia fail to enter East Europe at all by the end of Winter 1939, Germany may then declare war on and occupy East Europe at the same costs and benefits. (Germany would not need to occupy Bessarabia, which would remain in Rumanian hands.) Should neither side have declared war on East Europe by the end of Spring 1940, eastern Poland is not divided along the Nazi-Soviet Partition line and belongs to whoever controls Warsaw, and the Baltic States become a separate area worth 25 BRPs and must have war declared on it separately if at all. Bessarabia remains a permanent part of Rumania. Neither Bessarabia nor Eastern Poland have any separate BRP value. East Europe, for purposes of 43.6, consists solely of the Baltic States.

43.5 {4ER, GG:47} May Germany attack East Europe in Fall, 1939?

A. Only by declaring war on Russia. See [43.41](#) for the consequences. Note that [43.3](#) allows the Axis temporary transit to East Poland.

43.6 East Europe's BRP value is 25. Once conquered, Russia continues to receive 25 BRPs for East Europe during YSS as long as she retains control of at least one city therein. Control of East Europe and determination of which side gets the BRPs is handled in the same manner as colonies (*see* [24.4](#)).

43.7 The Russian DoW on East Europe does not activate Rumania, unless the Russians also proceed beyond the Eastern Front boundary there. This would cost Russia another DoW on Rumania, and in any event could not be done unless Germany had left Rumania ungarrisoned. Should Russia have the opportunity to declare war on an ungarrisoned Rumania, she need not first declare war on East Europe. The four Rumanian hexes of East Europe would be treated solely as part of Rumania and would be excluded from East Europe conquest requirements.

43.7 {GG:47} May Rumania set up its forces in Bessarabia if Russia declares war on it and East Europe at the same time?

A. Yes.

43.8 East Europe after occupation does *not* become part of Russia for purposes of unit construction, partisan construction or movement. The occupation of East Europe does not lower the BRP value of Poland or Rumania.

43.9 If Poland survives Germany's first turn attack, her Movement phase is executed before Russia's. Poland, although allied to France and Britain, may take an independent Offensive or Attrition Option in the east at no cost to Britain (an exception to 23.2). Although Russian forces may have entered Eastern Poland, Poland's Attritions or Offensives may be directed only against the Axis and only those Polish forces adjacent to Axis units are counted for Attrition.

44. THE RUSSIAN WINTER—

44.1 On the first Winter game turn following DoW between Russia and Germany, all Axis forces (except Finns) east of the original Russian border are not doubled on defense. Units behind rivers, on swamps or mountains, etc., are still tripled. The Axis may not use an Offensive Option on the Eastern Front.

44.2 Russia may, at her option, elect to postpone the effect of this rule until the second Winter provided there are currently less non-Finnish Axis ground units east of the original Russian border than the total rolled by

four dice. Such choice must be announced at the beginning of the first Winter game turn after the four dice roll.

44.2 {4ER, 18:5:46} If the German DoW comes in a Winter turn after the time for the Russian Winter Dice Roll has passed is that turn automatically subject to the severe winter rules?

A. No—the Russian winter dice roll could not occur until the next winter turn.

44.2 {GG:47} If the German DoW comes in a Winter turn after the time for the Russian Winter dice roll has passed, is that turn automatically subject to the severe winter penalties?

A. No—the Russian Winter dice roll could not occur until the next Winter turn.

44.3 If Russia declares war on the Axis and does so on a Winter turn, that turn is the first Winter (even if the Axis have already conducted their own Winter player turn) and Russia may not elect to postpone first Winter effects.

44.4 Allied variant counter 10 may be played the same Winter this rule is effective (in which case the only extra benefit to Russia is a free Offensive Option), or it may be held for use on a subsequent Winter turn. If Russia postpones the regular first Winter effects, she may use this variant counter for the first Winter.

44.5 In the 1942 and 1944 scenarios the first Winter is assumed to have already occurred and this rule is inapplicable.

45. RUSSO-ALLIED COOPERATION—

45.1 All stacking restrictions contained in [34.3](#) through [34.37](#) apply equally to stacking of Russian and Western Allied units throughout the game. The following restrictions are additional.

45.2 Russia may not give air or naval support to any western Allied ground combat or naval or air mission, and vice versa.

45.3 Russian and western Allied ground units may not combine to attack the same hex. Should they both wish to attack the same hex, whichever group is able to bring the largest number of combat factors to bear (not necessarily the best odds attack) against the hex gets to attack first. If they fail to eliminate the defender, the other may then try. Any Axis DAS which survives the first attack must also be used against the second and cannot be added to or withdrawn prior to the second attack.

45.3 {GG:47} Could Russia and the Western Allies attack by seaborne invasion in this manner, a second attack being made if the first fails?

A. No. The Sequence of Play requires that invasion fleets be in the target hex before combat die rolls begin. This would violate [45.1/34.3](#).

Similarly Russian/Western Allied paratroops could not be made in the same hex—an exception occurring if one dropped and was eliminated in the Combat Phase (the other could then drop during exploitation).

45.4 Where Russia and the western Allies have both constructed partisans in the same country (*see* [32.14](#)), the "Russian" partisans may not stack with the "Allied" partisans nor may the two combine to attack the same hex or hexes in a single attack.

45.5 Russian controlled sources/fleets may not provide supply/sea supply lines for the Western Allies and vice versa. Russian air/naval units may not base at Western Allied bases and vice versa. Russian air units may not SR over water via Western Allied bases and vice versa.

45.5 {GG:47} May a Western Allied air base counter be initially placed on, or SRed to, a Russian-controlled hex?

A. Yes, and vice versa. Note however, the prohibitions of [28.14](#) and that per [28.12/28.15/45.5](#) the hex would have to be supplied from a Western source.

45.6 No more than ten western Allied factors may ever be placed in Russia.

45.6 {23:4:46} Does this rule still apply if Russia has been defeated?

A. No.

46. SPAIN & SPANISH COLONIES—

46.1 Spanish Morocco and the Balearic Islands are integral parts of Spain. They pass to the control of the first major power to conquer Spain. Spain may not construct units in Spanish Morocco or the Balearic Islands although it may place them there when initially invaded.

46.2 Spain (only) may supply Spanish (only) ground units in Spanish

Morocco by sea despite the lack of port therein.

46.3 Should the Axis declare war on Spain their prestige suffers from striking at a fellow fascist government. As a result Axis variants 1, 3, 5, and 7 are cancelled if not already played and the Axis player must roll a "6" or higher with one die (33.63) to activate a minor ally.

46.3 {19:1:46} How does the Axis player roll "or higher" than a 6; does this mean Foreign Aid recipients can get +1 DRMs for BRP grants rather than just cancelling out an enemy's BRP grants?

A. No, delete "or higher".

46.3 {GG:47} How does the Axis player roll "or higher" than a "6"; does this mean Foreign Aid recipients can get +1 DRMs for BRP grants rather than just cancelling out an enemy's BRP grants?

A. No, delete "or higher".

46.3 see [33.63](#) & [46.3](#)

47. THE SUEZ CANAL—

47.1 Hexsides LL30/LL31, MM30/LL31, and MM30/MM31 are the Suez Canal; they are treated as a river for all purposes (Movement, Combat, etc.), the only exception being that naval units may enter them. Naval movement may occur only if the hexes adjacent to the canal are under friendly control. The two remaining hexsides to the south are full ocean (Gulf of Suez) and are treated accordingly.

47.2 If the Axis control both Suez city and Alexandria, Britain immediately loses 25 BRPs. Britain does not get one turn to try to recapture. If the British previously suffered a 25 BRP loss for this area they do not again lose 25 BRPs, but they could suffer a 25 BRP loss for this area in addition to a 25 BRP loss for the loss of Gibraltar (37.1).

47.3 If the Axis gain control of any hex adjacent to the Suez canal, and the Allies fail to immediately recapture it, the canal becomes unusable by both sides. Being made unusable does *not* activate the 25 BRP penalty for the British (47.2). It does not again become usable until one side has controlled *all* canal-side hexes for two complete game turns. Thereafter, the side that controls the canal may move through it and may SR/Sea Escort as provided in 37.3. *EXCEPT/ON:* The Western Allies may prevent Axis SR/Sea Escort through Suez by removing any one nine factor fleet from play. This fleet is placed, for convenience, in the Lend Lease box, moving it there (or thereafter returning it to play in any port in Britain [or France if French] and thereby lifting the blockade of the Gulf of Suez) costs one SR. The blockading fleet may perform no other function while in blockade position. The two-turns-to-repair rule is effective whenever the canal subsequently changes hands.

47.3 {4ER, 18:5:46} Could the British SR a unit into Suez city from England if Gibraltar is lost and the canal has been damaged?

A. Yes

47.3 {GG:47} Can Britain SR a unit into Suez city from England if Gibraltar is lost and the canal has been damaged?

A. Yes.

47.3 {4ER, 18:5:46} Could either side carry supply to the Suez above and beyond the limits of 47.3 in this manner?

A. No—furthermore, the Axis could not even supply the four units allowed the Allies by 47.3.

47.4 If Axis ground units control Suez city, any fleets there must be relocated to the closest friendly Mediterranean port *if* all other Suez canal hexsides and Gibraltar are still under Allied control. Otherwise, such fleets are out of play until the next Allied player turn, when they reappear at any western front port during the SR phase. This costs one SR each; the owner may delay their reappearance if he wishes to use his SRs for other purposes.

48. SWITZERLAND—

No nation may declare war on Switzerland. Switzerland hexes may not be entered by ground units or overflown by air units.

49. VICHY FRANCE—

49.1 The following actions occur immediately when France is conquered (i.e., following the Allied Combat phase when counterattack on Paris fails):

49.11 Half (rounded up) of each type of French unit, including air base counters, surviving in European France remain in play as Vichy French units. Existing naval and air factors are each totalled and halved to gain

the surviving half. All units in France remaining in play immediately move within the borders of Vichy France at no SR cost, and are positioned therein by the German player. They may be placed on any vacant hex in the Vichy zone, regardless of adjacency or ZOC of either Axis or Allied units.

EXAMPLE: Seven infantry and three armor units survive; four infantry and two armor remain as Vichy; three infantry and one armor are removed.

49.11 see [28.66](#) & [49.11](#)

49.12 The die is rolled once for Lebanon-Syria and once for Tunisia-Algeria-Morocco. If the die roll is even, the colonies become Vichy French; odd, they become Free French. This die roll would not change the status of any colony already controlled by the Axis as a conquest.

49.12 & 49.9 {GG:47} France falls; the Axis powers control Tunis but the Allies did not have their 24.42 chance to retake it. Is Tunisia Axis or Vichy; does the Axis receive Tunisia's BRPs next YSS?

A. Axis controls Tunisia and do receive the BRPs. Control of all cities suffices for purposes of rule 49.12/49.9.

49.13 Units in French colonies become Vichy or Free French according to the die roll above. They are not halved. Units outside both France and her colonies move to the nearest non-Axis controlled French soil—if to France they are counted during the halving process, if to a colony they follow the colony die roll. French fleets, wherever located, return to Marseilles (unless the Allies hold variant counter 3 in which case the British player may move them to the nearest British controlled port on their current front) and undergo the halving process. If any other unit is equidistant between France and a colony, or between two colonies, the German player chooses where it goes. He must choose before the colony die rolls are made.

49.14 Corsica becomes Vichy without a die roll. Any French conquests and any other French-controlled hexes become Axis. Any French units in Corsica would remain there but would be counted in the halving process. *EXCEPT/ON:* Any controlled hexes which can trace supply to a Free French colony remain in Free French control unless they are closer to European France or a Vichy French colony.

49.2 Vichy France's status is now that of an *inactive* German Minor Ally, with three differences: Allied DoW on Vichy plus German Intervention is insufficient to activate Vichy; only the appropriate variant counter or the Vichy activation die roll described below can do this. An active Vichy yields no BRPs to Germany, only units for the German force pool. Vichy units remain on the board from the fall of France instead of being off-board awaiting activation. Vichy city functions as the capital of Vichy France between the fall of France and the conquest or deactivation of Vichy France. It is treated as an ordinary city at all other times.

49.2 {GG:47} Is the city of Vichy a supply source for (1) Vichy units and/or (2) Axis units?

A. (1) Yes; (2) only if Vichy is activated as an Axis Minor Ally.

49.3 Germany controls the movement and placement of Vichy forces. She may freely move units back and forth between Vichy and her colonies. German units may freely move and SR through, or remain in, Vichy territory (although doing so reduces the chance of Vichy activation) and may stack with Vichy units. Italian units may do the same with German permission if Italy is actively allied with Germany. Any SRs by Vichy units count against German SR limits. Vichy units may be supplied by any Axis-controlled supply source. While Vichy is neutral, Vichy fleets may perform no functions except to supply and Sea Escort Vichy units.

49.3 {GG:47} May unactivated Vichy units ever be moved outside of Vichy territory (except for movement between Vichy and Vichy colonies)?

A. No—not even if Vichy is being attacked.

49.4 During any German Construction phase beginning the player turn after the fall of France, Germany may spend five BRPs to make a Vichy activation die roll. If, after additions and subtractions as shown in 49.42, the roll is '6' or more, Vichy is activated as a German Minor Ally.

49.41 During any British Construction phase beginning two game turns after the fall of France, Britain may spend five BRPs to make a Vichy deactivation die roll. If, after additions and subtractions as shown in 49.42, the roll is '1' or less, Vichy ceases to exist as a political entity (becoming again merely a part of France); each Vichy colony is controlled by no one and may be acquired by the first power able to occupy all ports/cities therein. The hexes of European Vichy France and

Corsica pass to German control, unless Allied units have already made them friendly to the Allies. All Vichy forces are removed from the board at the end of the British Construction Phase.

49.41 & 49.5 & 49.9 {23:4:46} If the Axis acquire control of a Vichy colony after Vichy is deactivated, may they receive BRP's for it?

A. Yes; after deactivation, there are no "Vichy" colonies.

49.42 In addition to possible restraints to Vichy activation due to Foreign Aid (33.6), the following modifications are applied to the Vichy die roll when applicable.

+1 If Britain does not control Malta.

+2 If the Allies declare war on Vichy France.

+2 If Britain does not control Suez and/or Alexandria.

+2 If Britain does not control Gibraltar.

-1 If all French colonies are Free French or under Allied control.

-1 If no Axis units are in Africa (including the east bank of Egypt).

-1 If Axis forces have crossed Vichy territory, except on the first Axis player turn after the fall of France. This penalty does not apply if Axis forces intervene in Vichy territory after Allied attack on Vichy. Axis may trace supply through Vichy territory at any time without penalty.

-1 If U.S./British non-airborne forces are in a Bridgehead or control a port on the European continent. (Gibraltar and Norway don't count. Neither does Sicily, nor any other island.)

-1 If the U.S. has declared war on the Axis.

-2 If Axis declares war on Spain.

49.42 {4ER} If Britain controls Suez but not Alexandria or vice versa, does the +2 modification apply?

A. Yes—the slash is read as "and/or".

49.42 {18:5:46, GG:47} If Britain controls Suez but not Alexandria or vice versa, does the + 2 modification apply?

A. Yes, the slash is read as "and/or".

49.42 {GG:47} Does the -1 DRM penalty apply if Axis forces occupy Vichy territory without "crossing" it?

A. Yes.

49.43 Britain and Germany may each make only one activation/deactivation roll per player turn. Once either nation succeeds, including activation by variant counter 3, no further rolls on the table may be made.

49.4 {GG:47} During the Axis Construction Phase, Vichy activation succeeds. Does Vichy activate immediately, so that her fleets may be used for sea escort during Axis SR Phase?

A. No. See the Sequence of Play—the 33.63 die roll, even though it might be automatic, does not occur until the *next* Axis player turn, between DoWs and option selection.

49.4 see 33.6 & 49.4

49.5 Whether active or inactive, all Vichy units are removed from the game at the end of the Combat phase in which the city of Vichy is solely occupied or controlled by Allied forces other than partisans. Control of any hexes in Vichy France not yet occupied by the Allies reverts to Germany; any remaining Vichy colonies are controlled by no one. Marseilles and Lyons count as Axis-held objectives while under Vichy control. All Vichy units are also removed from the game at the end of the Axis Combat phase in which they fail to retake an Allied controlled Paris. A partisan controlled Vichy or Paris does not result in the fall of Vichy France or elimination of Vichy units.

49.5 {GG:47} Suppose Italy controls Lyons and/or Marseilles when France falls. Do they count as Italian-controlled objective hexes?

A. Yes.

49.5 see 49.41 & 49.5 & 49.9

49.6 Any British units trapped in Vichy territory by the fall of France must leave during the SR phase of the Allied player turn in which France is conquered. SR over the uncontrolled Vichy hexes is permitted on a one-time basis in this instance, but must obey all other SR rules—this exception does *not* extend to British units which find themselves in the non-Vichy portion of France (*See* 26.5). nor does it allow any British SR *into* Vichy territory. Adjacency to Vichy units does not prevent British SR in this instance, but adjacency to any Axis unit does. If Britain is unable to remove all units she must, at the start of the next Allied player turn, either declare war on Vichy France or else destroy those units beginning their turn in Vichy territory. If Britain declares war on Vichy France, SR over controlled Vichy hexes is still allowed during that player turn.

49.6 {GG:47} Must the British SR units out of Vichy territory if they can do so, but would rather declare war on Vichy?

A. They must SR out if able to do so and must be given first priority over available SRs.

49.6 {GG:47} The fall of France catches a British airbase counter in the north tip of Corsica. Since Britain can't destroy it (12.5) and can't get it out by SR, will she be forced to declare war on Vichy France?

A. No. The fall of France has placed the counter out of supply; relocate it to London as per 28.15.

49.6 {GG:47} Could British units totally surrounded by Vichy units SR through those units to non-Vichy territory?

A. Yes.

49.6 {GG:47} What is the DoW cost against Vichy France?

A. 10 BRPs, same as a DoW against any other minor country.

49.6 see 27.42 & 49.6

49.7 Any Vichy units destroyed in combat *before* Vichy France becomes an active Minor Ally are removed from play permanently and may not be reconstructed. Any units destroyed after activation may be reconstructed by Germany in the same manner as any other active Minor Ally, but must be constructed in a continental Europe Vichy hex.

49.8 Britain receives BRPs for Free French colonies in each YSS that they remain out of Axis control. Free French units function as British in all respects: Britain pays for their Offensives; if eliminated they are returned to the British Force Pool and may be reconstructed in Britain. If Britain is conquered, any Free French units remain in play. If destroyed before America enters the war, they are permanently out of the game. After entry, they become part of the American Force Pool and the colonial BRPs go to America in the next YSS. Such units could take Offensive Options prior to American entry at no BRP cost. Objective hexes controlled by Free French units count as British (or U.S.) controlled.

49.9 The Axis never receive BRPs for Vichy colonies, unless they are conquered before the fall of France, or they are conquered by the Allies and later reconquered by the Axis.

49.9 see 49.12 & 49.9

49.9 see 49.41 & 49.5 & 49.9

50. SPECIAL SCENARIO RULES—

50.1 THE 1939 SCENARIO: (Twelve game turns: Fall 1939-Summer 1942). No Allied invasions are allowed during the Summer 1942 turn. This is to prevent Allied invasions made to grab objective hexes on the last turn—invasions which would have been highly unrealistic in the context of a longer war.

50.11 The Axis always move first in Fall, 1939 even if the Allies play a variant counter giving them the BRP advantage at game start.

50.12 The United States must spend 35 BRPs for a DoW when it enters the game and is not eligible for any growth in the 1942 YSS.

50.13 Within the time span of this scenario, the Americans may make no Allowable Builds and can deploy only "At Start" forces and BRP grants.

50.2 THE 1942 SCENARIO: (Twelve game turns—Spring 1942—Winter 1944.)

50.21 The Axis always move first in the Spring 1942 turn. Normal BRP level determination governs thereafter. ERRATA: The German force pool should show the airborne unit as an Allowable Build—not Available At Start—and there should be only three German fleets, not four.

50.22 The U.S. begins the scenario already at war and does not pay DoW cost to enter. All American At Start forces start in the U.S. box.

50.23 There is no 1942 YSS except for SW Builds for Germany, U.S., and Britain which may be added to their Surplus SW figures (3.39).

50.24 Vichy France is inactive. Vichy units are: in European France or Corsica, five 2-3 infantry and a 9-factor fleet; in Tunisia-Algeria-Morocco, one 2-3 infantry. Axis units may not be placed in Tunisia-Algeria-Morocco on opening setup; rule 49.3 governs thereafter. Activation/deactivation attempts (49.4) may begin in Spring, 1942 .

50.25 The Free French have two 2-3 infantry in Lebanon-Syria.

50.26 Germany adds 45 BRPs for her Minor Allies to her beginning

Base.

50.27 Britain has control of Tobruk and those Libyan hexes either partially or wholly south and/or east of Tobruk, however, these hexes need not be occupied.

50.3 *THE 1944 SCENARIO:* (Up to nine game turns—Spring 1944—Spring 1946.)

50.31 The Allies move first in the Spring, 1944 turn. Normal BRP level determination governs thereafter.

50.32 There is no 1944 YSS except for SW Builds for Germany, U.S., and Britain which may be added to their surplus SW figures (3.39).

50.33 Germany adds 45 BRPs for her Minor Allies to her beginning BRP Base.

50.34 There is no Vichy France. There are two Free French 2-3 infantry which must start in the Mediterranean.

50.35 Germany gets the use of six Italian naval factors in any German-controlled Mediterranean port(s). Rule 26.72 applies to these factors.

50.36 Neither side may invade or violate the territory of any minor country which starts the scenario neutral.

51. THE MULTI-PLAYER GAME—

51.1 Two, three or four players may play any scenario or the Campaign Game. Five players may play any version except the 1944 scenario, while six players may play either the Campaign Game or the 1939 scenario. Recommended allotment of major powers to varying numbers of players is:

No. of Players	1939/Campaign Game	1942	1944
3	UK/US	UK/US	UK/US
	Germany/Italy	Germany/Italy	Germany
	USSR/France	USSR	USSR
4	UK/US	UK/US	UK
	Germany	Germany	US
	Italy	Italy	Germany
	USSR/France	USSR	USSR
5	UK/US	UK	
	France	US	
	Germany	Germany	
	Italy	Italy	
	USSR	USSR	

51.2 If a player withdraws from a multi-player game, play continues with control of the withdrawing player's power(s) assigned to one of his allies. If, from withdrawals, only two players remain, the victory conditions for the two-player game apply. If three or more players play to completion, the multi-player victory conditions are used. Under the multi-player victory conditions even though one side loses the game, a member of that side could come out the biggest individual winner. Thus keeping one's allies busy against the enemy while picking up objectives oneself becomes quite critical. The Allies may find a strange reluctance on the part of the Russian player to get involved in the fray unless Germany threatens to win it all, and the Italians will be equally reluctant to do Germany's bidding without getting something out of it themselves.

51.3 DIPLOMATIC AGREEMENTS:

51.31 Players may make any agreements they wish, with allies, enemies, future enemies or future allies, so long as their agreements are not contrary to the rules of the game. Agreements may include, but are not limited to: cooperative intervention, neutrality, truce, BRP grants, spheres of influence, command arrangements, basing privileges, air and naval support, and limitations on SW or on other arms construction.

51.32 Agreements need not be kept. Players are free to break them at any time (just as many nations freely broke treaty commitments during—and before and since—the war years). The only penalty for breaking an agreement is to ensure the offended player's distrust for the remainder of that, and possibly future, games.

51.33 Players may wish to agree before a game to limit diplomatic discussions to the beginning of each turn and/or to put a time limit on

them.

51.4 No player may move ground units to or over hexes controlled by an ally, during Movement or SR, without that ally's consent. Nor may he base air or naval units at a base controlled by his ally without consent. A player who controls a supply source may never refuse to allow an ally to trace supply from it. See, however, 45.5.

51.5 Whenever on the same turn two allies wish to attack the same minor country or colony, or to intervene in the same minor country, and cannot reach agreement on how to proceed, a coin is flipped. Winner of the flip may move one unit into, or adjacent to the forces of, the territory in question. The loser then moves one unit, and they continue to alternate until one or the other does not desire to move any more units in that vicinity. This procedure may be used either during Movement, Combat, Exploitation, or SR; and may be adapted for other instances where allies cannot reach agreement on how to proceed. Since such disagreements indicate a strain on the alliance, units of the allies concerned may not stack together on that front for the remainder of that player turn—though units already stacked together could remain so if they did not move.

51.6 On subsequent turns, no nation may enter a country which has been attacked by its ally without that ally's permission. Such permission, once given, may not later be revoked. When two or more allies participate in a conquest which yields BRPs, they may divide those BRPs in any manner they desire. If they are unable to reach agreement the BRPs are divided equally, dropping fractions.

51.7 A player may agree to place some of his units under the control of one of his allies. But, except as specifically provided for in the German-Italian cooperation rule (36.2) such change of control cannot be used to enable one ally to evade the BRP cost of an Offensive Option; nor can it be used to "transfer" unused SRs from one ally to another.

52. A SAMPLE TURN—

The game begins with a selection of one of the three scenarios or the Campaign Game. The units are then issued to each player according to individual Force Pool requirements of the scenario being played. All replacements and new units will be drawn from the players' respective Force Pools during the course of the game. The players then place their Basic Resource Point markers (hereafter referred to as BRPs) on the BRP Inventory Charts of their respective scenario cards. Players then set their available At Start forces on the board in the Order of Deployment specified by the Scenario and subject to stacking and the Deployment Limitations of the scenario being played. Play then begins.

In play, the party moving first decides which Options he wishes to take on each of the three Fronts—Western, Mediterranean, or Eastern—where he will conduct operations. The player(s) deduct BRPs for any Offensive Options chosen by moving the BRP markers down to the appropriate level on each player's BRP Inventory Chart. The player(s) for the moving side then move their pieces on all fronts, taking care not to execute a maneuver not allowed on a Front by the particular Option chosen for that Front. Any combat is then resolved using the appropriate combat results table.

Players need not choose the Offensive Option. They may instead select Pass or Attrition Options, which do not require an expenditure of BRPs. Each player must decide which Option is the best course of action for him on each Front on which he has units that turn and then follow the procedures allowed by the Option chosen on each particular Front. A player may elect to use the same Option on each Front, a different one on each Front or one Option on two Fronts and another on the third so long as the Option chosen is the same (or a Pass Option) as that taken by his allies on the same front.

After conducting Movement and Combat according to the directions of the Option he has chosen for each Front, a player can create new units by "paying" for them with BRPs that he subtracts from his BRP level according to the dictates of the BRP Costs Chart, adjusting the BRP markers on his BRP Inventory Tracks downwards to reflect the lower level of remaining BRPs. He may also give BRPs to major powers that are allied with him, again reducing his own BRP Inventory markers in preparation for the BRP transfer which takes place in the SR phase.

Finally, the moving player may move a number of each major power's units under his command anywhere on the board subject to SR limits.

Play then moves to the other major Alliance or player who may repeat the steps of the turn outlined above. At the conclusion of their move the

Time Markers are moved on the TIME TRACK printed on the board and a new turn begins with the new adjusted BRP totals of each side checked to see who moves first in the new turn. If the new turn is also the start of a new year, a YSS is resolved first and each power receives new BRPs for the year. These new BRP totals are checked to determine who moves in the coming turn. The winner is that nation or individual player who has achieved the highest level of victory as determined by control of objective hexes and scenario victory requirements.

DESIGN CREDITS

Original Research & Design: John Prados

Redesign: Donald Greenwood

Development: Larry Bucher and Donald Greenwood

Production Assistant & MVP: Mark C. Nixon

Cover Art: Scott Moores

Rulebook Illustration: Rodger MacGowan

Mapboard: Dale Sheaffer

Playtesting: Bill Nightingale, Robert Cross, Sam Mustafa, Kevin Combs, Tom Becker, Charles Cottle, R. Andrew Warmer, David Smith, John Sutherland, Patrick Lucas, Dr. F. Mueller, Richard Shagrin, Marcus Watney, Michael Crane, Jim Burnett, Benjamin Hackman, Scott Swanson, Bob Beyma, Alan R. Moon, George Minde, Mark McLaughlin.

Printing: Monarch Services, Inc.

Typesetting: Colonial Composition.

QUESTIONS

The Avalon Hill Game Company will answer questions on play of the game *THIRD REICH* provided they are accompanied by a self-addressed, return envelope bearing first class postage. Those living outside the United States and unable to procure U.S. postage stamps, must include sufficient International Reply Coupons or currency to pay for return postage. Questions must be phrased in such a manner that they can be answered with a simple yes or no. Questions should not refer to grid coordinates. Such questions must be accompanied by a diagram of the situation to facilitate an easy response. Questions regarding strategy of play, history, or design of the game will not be answered. Such information is available only in the pages of our magazine: *THE GENERAL*.

YET MORE POSSIBILITIES

ADDITIONAL VARIANT COUNTERS FOR THIRD REICH

By Larry Bucher

When Larry and I redesigned THIRD REICH we discussed at length the wisdom of making the variant counters a required part of play and doing away with their old optional rule status. The big factor in favor of the change was simply that the variants added so much interest to the play of the game and got it out of the stereotyped rut of the historical sequence of events that repeated play often generated. The negative aspect of making the variants part and parcel of the basic game was that it would force an ahistorical, albeit possible, event to occur and thus destroy the chance of playing a purely historical game. The answer to this problem was found in the development of the Intelligence Table in which players could conceivably void their opponent's variant counter thus allowing the possibility of a purely historical game while retaining the chance for a surprising twist that could wildly fluctuate the prevailing strategies. Yet another argument against enforced employment of the variant counters was the extreme power some of the possible variant combinations embraced. The Spanish and Turkish Minor Ally draws were widely viewed to be extremely powerful tools for the Axis and a threat to play balance. My solution for this was not to do away with the variants, but rather to increase their number so that the chances of drawing a particularly strong variant are diluted. Many of the following variant proposals are worthy of placement within the original ten, but we felt that the new proposals could not be play tested sufficiently prior to publication to warrant breaking up the original, time-tested set. Therefore, it was decided to offer a new set of ten variant situations to augment the original ten strictly as an optional rule. I think you'll find that by blending the two sets of variants into one combined range of possibilities that the game will be even more exciting and less luck dependent.

The extra variant counters introduced here for use with *THIRD REICH* should be used with skepticism and caution—a couple of cautions at least. They have not been playtested, not at all. And they have not been exhaustively examined for possible conflicts with the new rules, with the existing variants, or even with each other. Examined, yes, but not exhaustively, and unforeseen rule complications are virtually guaranteed to creep in somewhere. However, players who have grappled with the old *THIRD REICH* are certainly not strangers to rule complications; no group of gamers should be better qualified to cope!

Players who dislike fooling with home-made counters can easily crank in the additional variants by adding a hidden draw from a deck of cards at the time they draw variant counters. If the draw is red, the counter drawn is an original 1-10 variant; if black, it's one of the new 11-20 variants below.

Axis Variants

#11 Unrest in French North Africa. Play during any Axis player turn provided Axis control at least three hexes of European France.

If played while North Africa is Vichy, each colony becomes a minor neutral with forces of: Tunisia, one 1-3; Algeria, three 1-3s; Morocco, two 1-3s. Any Vichy units present in North Africa are removed from the game permanently.

If played while North Africa is Free French and/or under Allied control, the Axis may construct partisan units in each colony, in the same numbers as above.

If played before the fall of France, France must maintain at least three 2-3 infantry and one 5-4 air in North Africa. Conditions must be met by the end of the French player turn after the counter is played. If unable to do so, France loses 15 BRPs each turn conditions are not met, and may not use SRs for any other purpose. When France falls a normal colony die roll is made and the appropriate one of the two above procedures is followed.

#12 Poland backs down, Hitler obtains corridor without war. Hexes J35/K34/L34 become part of Germany. The Fall 1939 turn opens with no one at war; Britain, France, and Poland are not yet actively allied. Germany does not get her free offensive option in the East; her 20-factor requirement in the East is still in effect. Russia may occupy east Europe (Baltic States and Bessarabia) as usual, but may not enter the eastern half of Poland until Germany does attack Poland. Either Britain or France may declare war on Germany at no BRP cost, whichever one does so last. Play prior to opening setups. Not applicable to 1942/44 scenarios.

#13 Stalin is more obdurate than usual and Axis anti-communist

propaganda more potent. Anti-communist attitudes harden in west. U.S. may not grant BRPs to Russia; Britain may grant no more than 20 per turn. Play when Russia enters war, or at start of 1942/44 scenarios.

#14 Bavarian redoubt: Berchtesgaden becomes both an unlimited supply source and a fortress. It, in addition to Berlin, must be captured and held for one opposition combat phase in order to conquer Germany. Play immediately (may not be delayed) when Allies advance into any hex of Germany, but not before 1943. Not applicable to 1939 scenario.

#15 Improved German planning and preparation for winter operations. The Russian Winter rule is negated. (But Allied variant #10 still has full effect if held.) Play whenever Russian player seeks to invoke Russian Winter rule. Not applicable to 1942/44 scenarios.

#16 Wafdist rising in Egypt. Axis may construct two partisan counters in Egypt. They are not able to close the Suez Canal nor to cost Britain 25 BRPs by occupying Suez and Alexandria. Play during any Axis construction phase provided at least one supplied Axis armor or infantry unit is in Egypt. Lost Wafdist counters may be reconstructed only if an Axis armor or infantry unit or another Wafdist counter is present in Egypt.

#17 Germany expands airborne capability. The 2 Fsjr may be treated as an airborne unit. Play when 2 Fsjr constructed, but not before 1942. Counter may not be played if 2 Fsjr has already been constructed as ordinary infantry, not if 1 Fsjr has been taken as a casualty at any time.

#18 Goering puts more emphasis on bombers; Battle of Britain deals heavier damage to British industry. Play only on first Axis player turn following fall of France, for immediate effect. At end of German combat phase, count German air factors within four hexes of London, subtract number of British air factors within same radius, and subtract that number of BRPs from Britain. Italian air doesn't count, even if lent. Not applicable to 1942/44 scenarios.

#19 No anti-Nazi coup in Belgrade. Yugoslavia becomes an Axis minor ally at the same time as Hungary. Only two partisans are allowed in Yugoslavia and only Russia may construct them. Allied attack plus Axis intervention (25.2) could also activate Yugoslavia. Play when Hungary activates, or when intervening in Yugoslavia, or at beginning of 1942/44 scenarios. Yugoslav forces are limited to Yugoslavia, Albania, Greece, Rumania, Hungary, East Europe, and Russia.

#20 No Pearl Harbor. Play just prior to Allied winter 1941 construction phase, or at beginning of 1942 scenario. Not applicable to 1944 scenario. Roll one die:

1: Japan does nothing. U.S. enters in Summer 42 on roll of 6, Fall 42 on 5-6, etc., Summer 43 and thereafter on 2-6. U.S. naval combat modifier becomes + 2.

2.: Japan attacks Russia. U.S. enters in Spring 42 on roll of 6, Summer 42 on 5-6, etc., Spring 43 and thereafter on 2-6. Free Russian builds (15.6) are not allowed; Russian force pool is permanently reduced by five 3-3s. U.S. naval combat modifier becomes + 2.

3-6: Japan attacks only British/Dutch possessions. U.S. enters in Summer 42 on 4-6, Fall 42 on 3-6, Winter 42 and thereafter on 2-6. Common to all rolls: U.S. may begin to build SW in a given YSS if she is already in the war *or* succeeds in entering in the Spring turn immediately following that YSS. U.S. may always begin to construct force pool units and to make BRP grants in Spring 42; but limits *until* entry are 27 BRPs/turn on construction, and 20/turn, 60/year on grants.

Allied Variants

#11 Belgium and Luxembourg agree to defensive cooperation with Allies. Allied units may enter in Fall 1939 (but may not set up there) and Allied air units may fly DAS against any Fall 1939 Axis attacks. Axis must still declare war in order to enter or to attack any units in these countries. Allied units may not move across nor attack across the German frontier from these countries, and Allied air units may not cross their air space to reach Germany, until they are attacked. Belgium becomes a French minor ally upon Axis DoW. Play prior to Axis Fall 1939 movement phase. Not applicable to 1942/44 scenarios.

#12 Allies may buy off Italy for one year only (provided Italy is not at war with a major power) by demilitarizing (completely evacuating) Malta, Tunisia, and Corsica and paying 25 BRPs to Italy. Allies must

evacuate the areas on the turn they play the counter (note that this could necessitate the destruction of some units on Malta). Italy may not declare war on any major power until the game turn one year from the time the counter is played; thereafter she may declare war on either the Allies or Germany at her option. The Allies may not reoccupy the demilitarized areas either during *or after* the one-year period unless at war with Italy. Italy's multi-player victory conditions are raised by two objective hexes in the 1939 scenario and become 3-4-5-6 in the campaign game. If Italy later declares war on Germany, German multi-player victory conditions are reduced by four objective hexes. Play during any Allied player turn; normal SR procedures must be used to get the BRPs to Rome. Not applicable to 1942/44 scenarios.

#13 "Purge him before he purges you." Tukhachevsky paraphrases a traditional barracks axiom and removes Stalin. The Red Army is not weakened by purges; Russian infantry availability is as follows:

1939 Campaign:

At Start: four 3-3, ten 2-3, three 1-3
Allowable Builds: six 3-3, seven 1-3
Available 1942: ten 3-3, five 1-3

1942 Scenario:

At Start: ten 2-3, twelve 3-3
Allowable Builds: eight 3-3, fifteen 1-3

Play during opening setup. Not applicable to 1944 scenario.

#14 Full Anglo-French cooperation. All restrictions of rule 34 are ignored. Play at beginning of any Allied player turn. Not applicable to 1942/44 scenarios.

#15 Hitler assassinated. Germany must pass on all fronts. Air and naval units are frozen in place. No DoWs may be made. 100 BRPs of the German per-turn spending limit are frozen—they are not lost, Germany simply may not spend them for any purpose during her turn. Ground units moved by SR may end their SR only in Germany. All restrictions apply for one entire Axis player turn only. Play at start of any Axis player turn in 1942 or later, provided Allies have already taken their own player turn (Axis are moving second).

#16 France builds armor instead of Maginot. The Maginot fortresses are plain terrain; all three French armor units are available at start. France may choose to add to her allowable builds either (a) three more 3-5 armor, or (b) one more 3-5 armor and one more 5-4 AF. (Counters must be provided.) Play during French opening setup. Not applicable to 1942/44 scenarios.

#17 France extends Maginot Line to channel. All French hexes bordering Belgium are fortresses. Play during French opening setup. Not applicable to 1942/44 scenarios.

#4* Spanish civil war won by Loyalists. Spain sympathetic to western democracies and will activate as minor ally if France is still in game at 1941 YSS, *or* if Rome and all of Africa are under Allied control. Spain becomes a French minor ally if France is still in game, otherwise British; the major power must pay 35 BRPs to activate Spain. As an exception to usual minor ally rules, Spain does not disappear if France is conquered after this counter is played; rather, she switches her allegiance to Britain and Britain inherits her BRPs at next YSS. Allies may build up to four partisans in Spain behind Axis lines if Axis enter.

SPECIAL: The Allies must roll one die when they first attempt to activate Spain (in addition to the roll required by 33.63). If this special roll is '6', the Loyalist government is communist-dominated and Spain can activate only as a Russian minor ally, and only if Russia is at war with the Axis. The other conditions do not apply.

If Spain becomes either a French or British minor ally, Portugal simultaneously becomes a British minor ally. Play at start of any Allied player turn. If Axis have entered Spain, Allies may play counter solely to be able to build partisans.

#19 No Winter War. Not having suffered Russian attack and land-grab, Finland has no bones to pick eastward and will not activate as a minor ally. If attacked, she will become a minor ally of any intervening power; otherwise she remains a minor neutral. Play during 1940 YSS or prior to opening setup of 1942/44 scenarios. Any Axis units in Finland must be relocated to Germany (at no SR cost) when the counter is played in 1940, and Finland may not then be attacked by Russia until Russia is at war with Germany. Counter may not be played if anyone has declared war on Finland.

#20 Roosevelt outfoxes isolationists; U.S. may enter early. Beginning Winter 1940 U.S. rolls one die at start of turn; may enter on: Winter 40, 6; Spring 41, 5-6; Summer 41, 4-6; Fall 41, 3-6; Winter 41 and thereafter, 2-6. Subtract one from the die roll if France is still in the

game; add one if Axis control a port or bridgehead in Britain. The U.S. base if she enters in 1940 is 145; in 1941 it is 185. U.S. At-Start forces are:

Winter 40: four Inf, two Fleets
Spring 41: five Inf, three Fleets
Summer 41: six Inf, three Fleets, one AF
Fall 41: seven Inf, four Fleets, one AF, one Armor
Winter 41: nine Inf, four Fleets, one AF, one Armor

The U.S. force level is fixed, and she begins to pay BRPs for additional construction, whenever the die roll permits her to enter, whether she chooses to declare war on that turn or not. Her usual allowable builds are not available until 1942. U.S. may build SW in 1941 YSS should she succeed in entering in 1940 or in Spring 1941. Play at start of any game turn Winter 1940 or later. Not applicable to 1942/44 scenarios.

*-Treat the rulebook variant #4 (Allied) as #18 and vice versa. This is necessary to exclude the possibility of Allies and Axis both holding a Spain variant.

The #12 variants are likely to encounter the most skepticism, particularly from conservative players. While Allied #12 shouldn't be all that devastating in a two- or three-player game, a lone German will be hard pressed if the Italian player can be persuaded to join the good guys. The victory condition tinkering is an effort to prevent total imbalance in such a situation; whether it is adequate or not is unpredictable.

The course of a game which starts with no one at war is even harder to foresee. I'd expect Germany to begin by gobbling up the low countries and, if left alone by the West, to continue absorbing minors. Her superior growth rate applied to acquired minors would rapidly outpace the western economies, so I'd expect Britain and France to feel virtually forced to declare war early. Those were my initial thoughts; my second thoughts run: what if the Allies don't oblige with a DoW and instead gang up on Italy early? But all this is unplaytested speculation. BRP-wise, the variant causes Germany to lose her DoW on Poland and her free offensive in the east (25 BRPs in all) while the Allies, presuming they eventually attack Germany, lose 35.

Players who consider the #12 variants too far out and can't stomach the thought of drawing one have a couple of alternatives: they can agree to treat #12 as a result of "No Effect", or they can replace the #12s with other variants of their own design.

INDEX

Activation Die Roll (Vichy)	49.3, 49.4	DoW (see Declaration of War)	
adjacent	5.34, 29.66, 37.2	DRM (die roll modifications)	
advance after combat	14.29	Dublin	33.62
Activation of Minor Allies	25.1, 25.2, 33.63	Duration	3.32
Aerial Combat	28.432	Durazzo	27.18
Africa	See Axis	East Europe	32.2, 43.4, 43.5
air bases	28.1, 36.21	East Front Garrison	29.121
Airborne (6.12-Stacking)	9.12, 31	East Prussia	15.4, 27.18
Air Warfare	28	Egypt	27.12, 37.3
Albania	27.18	Exchange	7.3
Alexandria	47.2	Exploitation	14.32, 29.436
Allies	(France, Britain, USA, Russia)	Finland	25.1, 25.41, 33.61
Allowable Builds	3.29	Flak/Interceptors	10.21, 10.23, 33.41-10
American DoW	12.14	Flip-Flop (turn)	12.12
Anglo-French Cooperation	34	Force Pool	3.38
Antioch	35.5	Foreign Aid	33.6
Astrakhan	40.4, 40.5	Fortresses	5.5
ASW (Anti-Submarine Warfare)	10.21, 10.43, 42.2	France	26.8, 29.18
At Start	3.38	Free French	2.34, 33.42, 34.5, 49.8
Athens	5.32, 5.43	Free Siberian Transfer	15.6
Attacks on Naval Bases	28.45, 41.2	Front	5.8, 29.12
Attacks on Fleets at Sea	28.52	Garrison	25.21, 25.8, 43.2
Attrition Option	18	German-Italian Cooperation	21.52, 36.1
Axis (Italy & Germany) Forces in Africa	35	Gibraltar	5.51, 5.6, 27.26, 29.14, 29.18, 29.23, 29.431, 29.65, 37
Axis Minor Allies	25	Greek Islands	27.17
Balearic Islands	46.1	Grid Coordinates	5.1
Baltic States	43.5	Ground Combat	14.2
Base Changes (Naval Movement Phase)	29.21	Ground Support	28.42
Basing (naval)	29.1	Grozny	40.4, 40.5
beach hexes	5.73	Gulf of Suez	47.1, 47.3
Beirut	27.12, 35.5	Haifa	35.5
Bergen	42.4, 42.7, 42.8	Helsinki	33.62
Bessarabia	25.44, 25.8, 43.4, 43.5	Hex Control	7
blockade	47.3	Hungary	25.1, 25.31, 25.44, 25.6, 33.41-5, 33.61, 43.411
Breakthrough	14.31	Inactive Minor Ally	25.2, 25.7
Bridgehead	9	Initial Deployment	16.71
Brindisi	5.43	Initiative	12.11, 40.3
BRP Base	10.31, 10.33	Intelligence	33.5
BRP Grants	15.5	Interception, Air	28.44, 28.52
BRP Spending Limit	11	Interception, Naval	29.5
BRPs (Basic Resource Points)	1.3, 10.3	Interceptors, Flak	10.21, 10.23, 33.41-10
Bulgaria	25.1, 25.42, 33.61	Intervention	23
capitals	5.41	Invasions	29.43
Caspian Sea	27.14	Iraq	25.46, 27.15, 33.41, 33.61, 38
Chronological Sequence	53	Ireland	33.41-2, 33.61, 39
cities	5.4, 5.44	islands	5.6, 27.24, 29.67
Coalition (2 player game) Victory Conditions	3.37	isolation (out of supply units)	17.1
Colonies	24.4, 26.6	Istanbul	27.26, 29.15, 29.65
Combat, Attrition	18.3	Italy	26.7
Combat, Offensive	14.2	Kerch Strait	5.58
Conquest of Major Powers	26	Kiel	27.26, 29.13, 29.65-66
Conquest of Minor Countries	24	Konigsberg	27.18
Construction	15	Krasnovodsk	27.14, 40.4
Construction (naval)	29.8	land/ sea hexes	5.3
controlled hexes	7.1, 24.21, 25.6, 32.6	Lebanon-Syria	49.12
Control	3.36	Lend Lease	40.0
Cooperative Conquest	24_7	Leningrad	5.58, 10.37, 26.91, 26.921, 42.9
Copenhagen	29.431	Lent Italian Forces	36.2
Corsica	15.4, 26.7-C, 29.18, 49.14	Libya	27.12
Counterair	28.43, 41.2	London	6.11
counters	4	Luxembourg	18.32, 24.3
Counter Intelligence	33.51	Lyons	49.5
Crossing Arrows	5.33, 5.36, 18.32, 29.23, 29.66	Maginot Line	5.52, 34.1
Crete	35.5	Malta	5.51, 27.13, 28.435, 35.1, 41
CRT (Combat Results Table)	14.26	Marseilles	29.122, 29.18, 34.1, 49.5
Cyprus	35.5	Messina	5.36, 26.7
DAS (see Defensive Air Support)		Minor Country Operations	22
Deactivation Die Roll (Vichy)	49.4	Moscow	10.37, 26.91, 29.621
Declarations of War (DoW)	12.21, 21	Mosul	25.43, 27.15, 33.41
Defensive Air Support (DAS)	28.51	Multi-Player Game	51
deficit spending penalty	10.32	Munawir	25.43
Denmark	5.32		
Deployment Limits	3.35		
Diplomatic Agreements	51.3		
Double SR	37.3		

Murmansk	42
Naval Combat	29.571
Naval Construction	29.8
Naval Supply	13.8, 27.23
Naval Warfare	29
Nazi-Soviet Pact	43.3, 43.4
Norway	21.54
Objectives	2.1, 5.42
Objectives, List of	2.1
Offensive Option, Movement phase	13
Offensive Option, Combat phase	14
Offensive Option, Construction phase	15
Option Determinants	20
Order of Deployment	3.34
Oslo	29.23, 42.7
Paris	26.8, 34.1
Partial Air Counters	28.6
Partial Naval Counters	29.7
Partisans	24.5, 26.92, 32, 49.5
Partition	43.4
Pass Option	19, 20.4
Percentages	54
Playable Hexes	5.2, 5.32, 5.6
Plymouth	5.43
Poland/East Europe	43
Ports	5.43, 29.1
Port Said	35.5
Quarterly Attrition Resolution Table	18.3
Quattara Depression	5.75
refusal of naval losses	29.9
Replacement Counters	30
Rhodes	35.5
Rumania	25.43, 43.7
Russia	26.9, 27.14
Russian Winter	44
Russo-Allied Cooperation	21.53, 45
SAC (Strategic Bomber)	10.23, 10.43, 33.42-7
Sample Turn ,	52
Sarab	40.4
Sardinia	15.4, 26.7-C
Scenario Cards	3
Scenarios	50
Sea Escort	16.3, 29.6
Sea Hexes	5.3
Sea Transport	29.42
self destruction	12.5
Sequence of Play	12, 55
Sevastopol	5.58
Shore Bombardment	29.41
Siberian Transfer	15.6
Sicily	15.4, 26.7-C
Situation	3.33
Spain	22.7, 25.45, 33.41, 33.61, 46.3
Spanish Colonies	46
Spanish Morocco	24.24, 27.17, 46.1
Special Scenario Rules	50
Spending BRP Limits	11.1, 33.51
SR (Strategic Redeployment)	16, 29.67
SR national limits	16.1
Stacking (by Allied nations—34.3, 45.1)	6
Staging	28.21-22-23
Stockholm	5.43
Strategic Warfare (SW)	10.2
submarines	10.22, 10.43, 33.41-8
Suez	29.27, 37.3, 47.2, 47.4
Suez Canal	8.22, 37.3, 47
Supply	27, 29.172, 35.1, 35.5, 37.3
Surplus SW	3.39
Surrender, French	26.8
Surrender, Italian	26.7
Surrender, Russian	26.92
SW (Strategic Warfare)	10.2, 10.4
Sweden	21.54
Switzerland	48

Tabriz	40.4
Tangiers	27.17
Terrain	5
Terrain Effects on Land Combat	5.7
Tobruk	50.27
Tunis	27.12
Tunisia-Algeria-Morocco	49.12
Turkey	25.45, 33.41-7, 33.611, 33.7, 40.5
Two Front Port	27.26, 29.13-14, -15, 29.65, 37.3-4
Ulster	15.4, 39
Unsupplied Units	17
US Based Fleets	29.17
US Box	29.25
US Deployment Limits	16.7
Variant Counters	33
Vichy	34.1, 49.2, 49.5
Vichy France	32.13, 33.41-3, 33.61, 49
Victory Conditions	2
Victory Conditions; Two Player	2.2
Victory Conditions; Multi-Player	2.3
Vologda	42.9
voluntary elimination of own units	12.5
Warsaw	43.4
West Wall	5.53
Winter	(See Russian Winter)
Winter, Severe (Allied Variant 10)	33.42
YSS (Year Start Sequence)	10
Zones of Control (ZOC)	5.35, 8, 13.3, 27.25, 29.423

FOURTH EDITION

These rules are the 1981 edition of *THIRD REICH* and must be played using the second edition mapboard and the third edition scenario cards. If you lack the current edition components for play of this game, send a self-addressed, return envelope bearing first class postage to The Avalon Hill Game Company, 4517 Harford Rd., Baltimore, MD 21214 and request a current parts price list. The 1981 edition map board is recognizable by the gray border around its outer edges and the words "Second Edition" printed in red next to the title. The 1981 third edition scenario cards are listed as such on the 1942 side of the Italian scenario card. Players should check to be sure that all participants are familiar with the 1981 fourth edition rules before commencing play.

[Compiler's note: The Avalon Hill Game Company went out of business many years ago. The note above is included solely for historical interest. Don't try to write to them.
—Thomas Arndt]

53. CHRONOLOGICAL SEQUENCE—

Events that occur at a specific time point in the game are summarized below.

1939 Fall	Allied variant 1 may be played.
1940 YSS	No BRP Base growth.
Spring	Germany may declare war on East Europe as per 43.5.
1941 Spring	Axis variant 4 effective; Allied variant 5 may be played.
Summer	German Minor Allies activated (25.1).
Fall	Restrictions on Russian DoW ended (21.54).
Winter	Free Siberian Transfer Placement Option begins (15.6).
1942 YSS	Axis variant 6 effective; Axis variant 9 may no longer be played. Restrictions on Anglo-French cooperation and on French BRP grants, and basing of fleets lifted.
Spring	1942 Scenario begins. Axis variant 8 and Allied variant 6 may be played. U.S. must declare war (Campaign Game/1939 scenario only). New units appear in Campaign Game/1939 Russian and Italian force pools.
Summer	No Allied invasions allowed (1939 scenario only). 1939 scenario ends. New units appear in U.S. and British Force Pool.
1943 YSS	Axis variants 1 and 7 no longer playable. Axis variant 10 may be played. ASW factors now destroy 1 ½ submarine factors each.
Spring	Allied variant 8 may be played. New units appear in German Force Pool. Italian surrender becomes possible.
Winter	Axis win marginal Campaign Game victory if they control 28 objectives (two-player game).
1944 YSS	Allied variant 7 may be played. ASW factors now destroy two submarine factors each.
Spring	1944 scenario begins. West Wall hexes become fortresses. New units appear in the German Campaign Game Force Pool.
Winter	1942 scenario ends.
1945 Summer	Campaign Game ends.
1946 Spring	1944 scenario ends.

54. PERCENTAGES—

The following percentage chances of various outcomes at different odds on the Combat Results Table is provided as a helpful aid to the beginner. EX (full) is an EX rolled by the attacker, in which he has to match the terrain-multiplied value of defender's units; EX (CA) is an EX rolled by defender when counterattacking, in which the attacker has to match basic value only. Attacks at 1-2 and 1-1 vary depending on the odds which defender would enjoy when counterattacking.

	A Elim	D Elim	EX (Full)	EX (CA)
1-4	83.33%	—	16.67%	—
1-3	66.67%	—	33.33%	—
1-2, D CA 1-4	50.00%	13.89%	33.33%	2.78%
1-2, D CA 1-3	50.00%	11.11%	33.33%	5.56%
1-2, D CA 1-2	51.43%	8.57%	34.29%	5.71%
1-2, D CA 1-1	55.88%	2.94%	35.29%	5.88%
1-2, D CA 2-1	59.90%	0.52%	36.46%	3.12%
1-1, D CA < 1-4	16.67%	50.00%	33.33%	—
1-1, D CA 1-4	16.67%	44.44%	33.33%	5.56%
1-1, D CA 1-3	16.67%	38.89%	33.33%	11.11%
1-1, D CA 1-2	17.65%	35.29%	35.29%	11.76%
1-1, D CA 1-1	25.00%	25.00%	37.50%	12.50%
2-1	3.13%	59.37%	18.75%	18.75%
3-1	—	71.43%	17.14%	11.43%
4-1	—	77.78%	16.67%	5.56%
5-1	—	83.33%	16.67%	—

55. SEQUENCE OF PLAY—

- I. Year Start Sequence (YSS): Not a part of any turn—it occurs between each Winter and Spring game turn.
 - A. Play of Axis variants 6 & 10; Allied variants 5 & 7
 - B. Strategic Warfare (SW) Resolution (10.2)
 - C. BRP Level Calculation (10.3)
 - D. SW Construction (10.4)
 - E. Determination of BRP Spending Limits (11)
- II. Game Turn
 - A. Play of Allied Variant 9 & 10
 - B. Russian Winter dice roll (winter turns only—44.2)
 - C. Determination of Player Turn Order (12.1)
 - D. First Player Turn
 1. Play of Axis Variants 3, 4, 5, 7; Allied Variant 6
 2. Declarations of War (DoW) (12.21, 21)
 3. Placement of forces of newly-attacked Minor Countries (22); Placement of Forces & Addition of BRPs Derived from newly-

- activated Minor Allies (25.3,25.4). Activation of Minor Allies (33.63; 33.7)
4. Option selections (12.22-12.26)
5. Movement & Combat phases of any Minors which have been attacked, but not yet conquered, by opponent. (12.16, 12.262)
6. Voluntary Destruction of units (12.5)
7. Movement phase (13, 19,42)
 - a. Movement of Fleets (27.231, 29.21)
 - b. Interception Attempts (28.52, 29.5)
 - c. Designation of Supply Fleets (13.8, 27.2) [was d.]
 - d. Movement of Air & Ground Units (28.2) [was c.—see 13.8]
 - e. Eliminate any units still overstacked from retreat during enemy Attrition Option (6.13)
8. Combat phase (14, 18)
 - a. Attrition Combat (18) may be performed before or after Offensive Option combat at attacker's Option.
 - b. Attacker announces all naval and air missions (14.11, 28.4, 29.4)
 - c. Resolve all Counterair missions (14.11, 28.432)
 - d. Defender announces DAS missions and any attacks on attacker's naval missions (14.12, 28.5, 29.5)
 - e. Attacker announces DAS Interceptions and any attacks on defender's naval missions (14.13, 28.44, 28.454, 29.5)
 - f. Resolve (e) above (14.13)
 - g. Resolve (d) above (14.13)
 - h. Conclude Sea Transport missions (14.14, 29.42)
 - i. Airborne drops (14.15, 31)
 - j. Ground Combat Resolution (14.16, 14.2,29.41,29.43)
 - (1.) Post-Combat Advance (14.29)
 - (2.) Place Bridgehead counters (9.2)
 - (3.) Conclude Seaborne Invasion mission (29.43)
 - k. Exploiting units move to Breakthrough hexes (14.16, 14.32)
 - l. Resolve air attacks on naval units in port (14.17, 28.45)
 - m. Exploitation movement (14.8, 14.33, 14.34)
 - n. Announce Ground Support missions (14.18)
 - o. Defender announces DAS (14.18)
 - p. Attacker announces & resolves DAS Interceptions (14.18)
 - q. Airborne drops (14.18)
 - r. Exploitation Combat (14.2)
 - (1.) Post-Combat Advance (14.29)
 - (2.) Place Bridgehead counters (9.2)
 - s. Attrition Combat (18)
 - t. Remove remaining units of any major or minor countries conquered during current phase (24.1, 26.22)
 - u. Hostile major power units in newly-conquered countries choose supply lines (23.23, 26.5)
 - v. Deduct BRPs for failure to recapture a previously-controlled capital (24.3, 24.43, 26.4)
 - w. Possible Italian surrender (26.7)
 - x. Relocate Vichy forces and determine status of French colonies (49.1)
9. Unit Construction phase (15, 29.8)
 - a. Placement of new units (15.4, 15.6)
 - b. BRP Grants (15.5, 33.6)
 - c. Vichy Activation/Deactivation attempts (49.4)
 - d. Intelligence attempts (33.5)
10. Strategic Redeployment (SR) phase (16, 29.6)
 - a. Allied ASW counters may move to and (in spring) from Murmansk box (16.8)
 - b. Movement of Lend-Lease box BRPs (40.3)
 - c. Murmansk Convoys (42)
 - d. Eliminate any units overstacked on a Breakthrough hex (6.14, 14.37)
 - e. Relocate unsupplied air base counters (28.15)
11. Removal of Unsupplied Units (17)
12. Removal of Certain Bridgehead Counters (9.4)
13. Possible Russian Surrender (26.92)
14. Possible Repair of Kiel Canal (29.13), Suez Canal (47.3)
- E. Second Player Turn
- F. Turn up all Inverted air and naval counters.

{18:5:46} 55. Erratum: Delete section II.B. and insert it in conjunction with II.E.3.

55. see 13.8 & 55